ICOM/400™

The Ultimate AS/400 Messaging Solution
Version 3.1

User and Administration Guide

We pride ourselves in producing good stuff. If you have any questions, problems, or suggestions regarding this product, please contact us at:

PINNACLE

810 S Cincinnati, Suite 200
Tulsa, OK 74119
(877) 369-6922
(918) 587-1536 fax

100 S Baumann
Edmond, OK 73034
(800) 311-0757
(405) 359-7490 fax

www.pbsnow.com info@pbsnow.com

Copyright Pinnacle Business Systems, INC 2000

Last Updated: 08/12/2003

Table of Contents

TABLE OF CONTENTS 2

CHAPTER 1 - PRODUCT HIGHLIGHTS AND TECHNICAL OVERVIEW 6

A QUICK LOOK AT ICOM/400 6
Providing Cost Effective & Time Savings Benefits 6
A TECHNICAL OVERVIEW OF ICOM/400 8
Systems Management 8
Monitors 8
Actions 8
Schedules 9
Delivery 9
Send Message using ICOM/400 10
Work with Monitors 10
Message Queue Monitor 11
Work with Actions 12
Add Action 12
Change Command List 13
Work with Schedules 13
Automatic Delivery of Messages 14
Work with Recipients 14
Create Recipient Group 16
Add Pager Company 16
Work with Escalation Tables 18
Tracking and Reporting 18
Work with Activity 18
Networking 19
Work with History Menu 19
Work with History 19
Display Escalation Information 19
Display ICM Log Information 20
Display QHST Log Entry 21
Service 21
Product Warranty and Support 21
Remote Customer Support 22
Quick Start Wizard 22

CHAPTER 2 - ICOM/400 INSTALLATION 23

ICOM/400 REQUIREMENTS 23
ICOM/400 INSTALLATION 24
First Installation — CD 24
First Installation — Tape 24
Upgrade 24
Internet Download Installation 24
ICOM/400 Voice Installation 25
ICOM/400 QUICK START WIZARD 25
ADVANCED SET-UP 37
Modem Configuration 37
Line Description Information 37
Pager Companies 37
E-mail 38
Recipients 38
Actions 38
Monitor Configuration 38
Testing 38

Autostart 39
Removing ICOM/400 39
MODEM CONFIGURATION 39
ICOM/400 MAIN MENU 42
Options 43

CHAPTER 3 - SENDING A MESSAGE USING ICOM/400 45

CHAPTER 4 - WORK WITH HISTORY 48

CHAPTER 5 - WORK WITH ACTIVITY 52

CHAPTER 6 - RECIPIENT INFORMATION 56

Option 1=Work with Recipients 56
Option 2 = Work with Recipient Groups 65
Option 3 = Work with Schedules 68
Option 4 = Work with Pager Companies 71
Option 5 = Work with Escalation Tables 74
Option 6 = Work with Pre-Defined Messages 75
Option 9 = Work with IP Entries 77

CHAPTER 7 - HISTORY INFORMATION 80

Option 1 = Remove History 80
Option 2 = Display Log 81
Option 3 = Remove Log Entries 83
Options 4 and 6 = Display Resource Communication Entries (#1 and #2) 83
Options 5 and 7 = Print Resource Communications Entries (#1 and #2) 84
Options 10 = Display E-mail Communications Entries 84
Option 11 = Print E-mail Communications Entries 84
Option 12 = Display Fax Communications Entries 85
Option 13 = Print Fax Communications Entries 85
Option 20 = Display QHST 85

CHAPTER 8 - SYSTEM MONITORS 89

Option 1 = Work with monitors 90
INDIVIDUAL MONITORS 92
Configuration Status (*CFGSTS) 93
CPU Monitor (*CPU) 94
Job Monitor (*JOB) 95
Job Queue (*JOBQ) 96
Message Queue (*MSGQ) 97
Network File (*NETF) 101
Object Size (*OBJSIZ) 102
Output Queue (*OUTQ) 103
QHST (*QHST) 104
Remote Device (*RMTDEV) 106
Spooled File (*SPLF) 106
Subsystem (*SBS) 109
User Defined (*USRDFN) 110
Option 2 = Start monitor 111
Option 3 = End monitor 111
Option 4 = Work with monitor types 112
Option 5 = Work with monitor subsystem 112
Option 6 = Work with schedules 113
Option 7 = Work with Actions 113
Option 8 = Send program message 116
Option 12 = Add monitor entries based on message queue. 116

Option 13 = Add monitor entries based on QHST. 118
Option 16 = Work with address information. 119

CHAPTER 9 - SYSTEM CONTROLS 121

Option 1 = Change System Attributes 121
Option 2 = Work with Function Authorities 126
Option 3 = Reset ICOM/400 131
Option 4 = Work with Page Queues 131
Option 5 = Work with Spooled Files 132
Option 6 = Work with ICOM/400 e-mail 135
Option 8 = Start ICOM/400 subsystem 136
Option 9 = End ICOM/400 subsystem 136

CHAPTER 10 137

Display ICOM/400 Log Entries (DSPLOGICM) 138
Display Message Queue (DSPMSGICM) 140
End Message Queue Monitor (ENDMSGQICM) 144
Hold Monitor using ICOM/400 (HLDMONICM) 144
Hold Message Queue Monitor (HLDMSGQICM) 145
Monitor Message Queue (MONMSGQICM) 145
Release Monitor using ICOM/400 (RLSMONICM) 146
Release Message Queue Monitor (RLSMSGQICM) 147
Remove ICOM/400 Activity (RMVATVICM) 148
Remove ICOM/400 History (RMVHSTICM) 149
Remove Log Entries using ICOM/400 (RMVLOGEICM) 151
Send using ICOM/400 (SNDICM) 151
Send Message using ICOM/400 154
Send Message using ICOM/400 156
Send Spooled File (SNDSPLFICM) 156
Work with Actions using ICOM/400 (WRKACTICM) 156
Work with Pager Companies using ICOM/400 (WRKCMPICM) 157
Work with Escalation Tables using ICOM/400 (WRKESCICM) 157
Work with Recipient Groups using ICOM/400 (WRKGRPICM) 157
Work with ICOM/400 E-mail (WRKMAILICM) 158
Work with Pre-defined Messages using ICOM/400 (WRKMSGICM) 159
Work with Pages using ICOM/400 (WRKPAGICM) 160
Work with Page Queues using ICOM/400 (WRKPAGQICM) 164
Work with Recipients (WRKRCPICM) 164
Work with Schedules using ICOM/400 (WRKSCDICM) 165
Work with Spooled Files (WRKSPLFICM) 165

CHAPTER 11 - AUTOMATED CUSTOMER SUPPORT 168

Troubleshooting 168
AS/Manager Customer Support Menu 168
PTF Retrieval 169
Sign-on to AS/Manager Support System 169
AS/Manager Communication 170

APPENDIX A - PRODUCT WARRANTY AND SUPPORT 171

Product Support Worldwide 171
When You Have A Question 171
Product Warranty and Maintenance 171

APPENDIX B – ICOM/400 VOICE 173

PC Requirements 173
Installation Instructions - PC 173
Reinstallation 174
Installation Instructions – AS/400 175

Frequently Asked Questions about Voice Messaging 176

APPENDIX C – INBOUND ICOM/400 VOICE 179

Option 1=Work with User Codes 179
Option 2=Work with Voice Menus 181
Option 3 – Work with IP Entries 185
Frequently Asked Questions about Inbound Voice 185

APPENDIX D – PHONE RIDER MODEM 187

PhoneRider Installation under Windows 98 187
PhoneRider Installation under Windows 2000 194
PhoneRider Installation under Windows NT 4.0 201

APPENDIX E - *INFO EXIT PROGRAM REFERENCE 211

Sample programs 212

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS 213

TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE WORKSHEET 217
ICOM/400 SET-UP WORKSHEET 218

Chapter 1 - Product Highlights and Technical Overview

A Quick Look at ICOM/400

Providing Cost Effective & Time Savings Benefits

It's Dynamic… **Message & Delivery Types**

- *E-mail*
- *Alphanumeric or digital pagers*
- *Digital Phones*
- *Workstations*
- *Fax*
- *Spooled files*
- *Network message*

It's Flexible… **Messaging**

- *Individual, group & "on call" recipients*
- *Escalation of pages until acknowledgement is received*
- *Multi-user & multi-line interface for dispatching*
- *Standalone paging system*
- *Customized delivery delays*
- *Multiple paging companies simultaneously*

"We send over 3,000 pages to over 300 people a month" explained Jim Hartley of Arapahoe County Sheriff's Office. "Thanks to Pinnacle's software, it's an invisible system, it runs error free. We often recommend it to other agencies."

It's Responsive… **Actions**

- *Remote command issuance*
- *Default message replies*
- *Forward messages*
- *Run or cancel jobs & execute commands*
- *Time stamp acknowledgements*
- *Send a customized message*
- *Reset failed communications lines*
- *Execute up to 999 commands for each event*

It's Powerful… **Systems Management**

- *Monitor configuration status including controllers, lines & devices*
- *Monitor remote devices via TCP/IP connections*
- *Monitor arrival of network files*
- *Monitor program failures*
- *Monitor program errors*
- *Monitor hardware errors*

It's Convenient… **Monitors**

- *Job queues*
- *Job run time*
- *Message queues*
- *QHST*
- *Output queues*
- *Object & library size*
- *CPU capacity*
- *Remote devices*
- *Network files*
- *Spooled files*

It's Smart… **Statistics**

- *Tracks actions over time*
- *Logs messages sent & errors*
- *Logs message activity*
- *Logs communications data*
- *Lists total and prints messages by recipient, delivery types, groups & date*
- *Total history by message ID from QHST*

"It was easy to install and was working within fifteen minutes of installation. There's no maintenance to it. You just let ICOM/400 do its thing,... You don't have to worry about it. We love it!" Gene Ewert, Colbalt Boats

It's Consistent… **Integration**

- *Central site can manage all messages*
- *Integrated multi-level security*
- *Integrated with IBM's BRMS/400 & Advanced Job Scheduler or any scheduler*
- *SAA/CUA compliant.*

It's Guaranteed… **Service**

- *30 day FREE TRIAL*
- *15 months FREE maintenance*
- *90 day MONEY BACK guarantee*
- *No additional charges for upgrades while under maintenance*
- *24 hour support line*
- *Receive PTFs electronically*

It's the Right Choice… **PINNACLE, Inc.**

- *Pinnacle is a leading-edge provider of software for the IBM AS/400*
- *Pinnacle products are focused primarily on AS/400 system management operations & e-business applications for both AS/400 & Windows NT networks.*
- *Formed in 1988, the firm developed a variety of software products that have become mainstay operating solutions for over 5,000 AS/400 users worldwide.*
- *Designated as an official IBM Software Supplier in 1992, Pinnacle has adopted the IBM Malcolm Baldridge standards to maintain the highest level of quality throughout the software development process.*

Systems Management

ICOM/400 helps you manage your system by monitoring its status and notifying you of any problems or potential problems.

ICOM/400 will monitor:

- *Your configuration status including your controllers, lines and devices*
- *The presence of remote devices via TCP/IP connections*
- *The arrival of network files*

As well as common events like:

- *Power failures*
- *Program errors*
- *Hardware errors*

And any of the other 24,000 messages that your AS/400 will post to QHST or a message queue.

Monitors

ICOM/400 can also be configured to run other user specified monitors for items like:

- *Job queues (number of jobs waiting, etc.)*
- *Maximum job length (maximum run time)*
- *Job existence*
- *Object and library size*
- *Number of spooled files in an output queue*
- *Specified message queues*
- *QHST*
- *Remote devices*
- *Network files*
- *Spooled Files*
- *Jobs running in a subsystem*
- *CPU capacity*

You can filter for important messages and exclude messages that you do not want to monitor. ICOM/400 can skip message queue entries if a match is found and can monitor for more than just message type and ID — it can look for a string of data like a line name, controller, program, code number or any other string. ICOM/400 gives you the flexibility to start and stop monitors for the whole system or for individual queues. Message filters can be copied from one monitor to another to simplify set-up.

Actions

ICOM/400 allows you to respond to messages with pre-determined Actions. Actions can include items such as:

- *Remote command issuance*
- *Default message replies*
- *Forwarding of messages*
- *Activation of jobs or commands with or without passed parameters*
- *Canceling jobs*

- *Sending customized network messages, and*
- *Resetting failed communication lines.*

ICOM/400 will execute up to 999 different commands in response to each message and allows you to customize message text and reply options for non-technical staff. So if you have a two-step response to a message, ICOM/400 can execute it for you.

Schedules

ICOM/400 has the most sophisticated scheduling options available. Users can define their own monitors and schedules which alert them to important business meetings or any other time management issues they specify. Schedules can also be assigned to monitors and recipients.

Delivery

ICOM/400 is the industry's leading monitoring and messaging system to deliver your notifications via several methods: e-mail, pagers, telephones, faxes, spooled files, workstations, and network messages.

Some of the ICOM/400 delivery features include:

1. *Can be used as standalone paging system*
2. *Supports alphanumeric and numeric pagers*
3. *Supports multiple paging companies simultaneously*
4. *Supports digital and analog phones*
5. *Multi-user/multi-line interface for dispatching*
6. *Customized delivery delays*
7. *Divide long messages into shorter ones for paging*
8. *Escalation of pages until acknowledgement is received*
9. *Select recipient based on "On-call" list*
10. *Restrict pages to a certain timeframe for each user*
11. *Nicknames for recipients*
12. *Create short names for pre-defined messages or saved messages*
13. *Retry sending the message if pager company is busy*
14. *Restricts which pagers a user can send pages to*
15. *Able to select multiple people to page based on different criteria*
16. *Able to send first or second level message text*
17. *Can bundle pages and send several at once*
18. *Will send all pages for one company in one call*
19. *A timer on batch so pages don't wait too long*
20. *Supports secondary outbound line if first is busy*
21. *Supports multiple outbound phone lines simultaneously*
22. *Send a message from an interactive Command Line or Menu*
23. *Send a message from a Batch program*
24. *Send a message based on a message in a message queue*
25. *Send a message to a Group Distribution list*
26. *Specifies queue name for message queue monitoring*
27. *Specifies minimum message severity for message queue monitoring*
28. *Specifies job name that sent the message for message queue monitoring*
29. *Specifies user id that sent the message or is associated for message queue monitoring*
30. *Specifies the program name that sent the message*
31. *Specifies the specific message ID received*

Send Message using ICOM/400

This command, SNDMSGICM, has many uses. For example, not only can you send a pager message to your employees reminding them of that 2:00 meeting that they must attend, you can also send them e-mail messages or message queue messages. You can send the message now or you can specify when you would like to send the message by designating a time in the schedule time field. You can send messages to one recipient, or to only those recipients who are on schedule to be paged.

Another important feature of this command is the ability to use SNDMSGICM with a job scheduler, or within a CL program. ICOM/400 can send a message to your users when a job has finished, or at a time that you specify. This is useful when you have a message that you send at a certain time every day or week. You don't have to keep keying in the message everytime, but can have your job scheduler work with ICOM/400 to do the job for you.

Work with Monitors

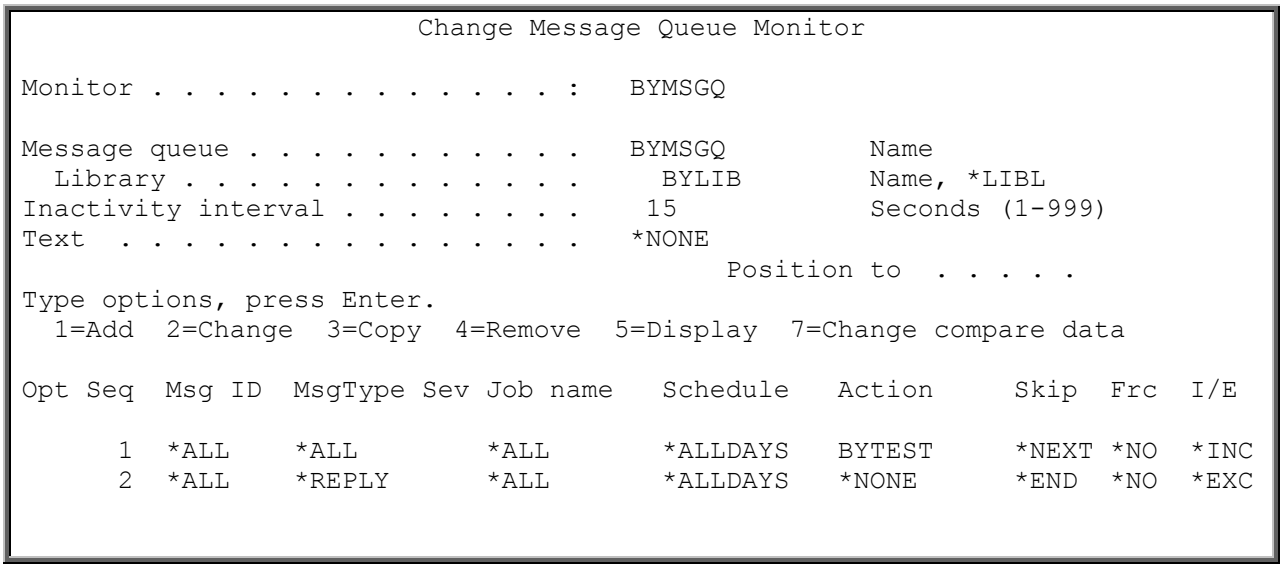
```
                                Work with Monitors
                                                              3/23/03  16:52:42
 Position to  . . . . . .

 Type options, press Enter.
   1=Add    2=Change    3=Copy    4=Remove    5=Display    6=Hold/Release
   7=Work with activity           8=Check now

                                    ---- Wake-up ----
Opt Monitor    Type      Schedule     Date     Time    Act Text

   BYMSGQ     *MSGQ      *ALLDAYS   *WAIT     0:00:00  N  *NONE
   BYOUTQ     *SPLF      *ALLDAYS   *WAIT     0:00:00  N  *NONE
   LANCECFG   *CFGSTS    SAMPLE     *HELD     0:00:00  N  Monitor PAGEMGR line f
   LBSCFG     *CFGSTS    *ALLDAYS   *WAIT     0:00:00  N  test 3 controllers mon
   LBSMSGQ    *MSGQ      *ALLDAYS   *HELD     0:00:00  N  *NONE
   MYMSGQ     *MSGQ      *ALLDAYS   *HELD     0:00:00  N  Monitor QSYSOPR messag
   NEW        *MSGQ      *ALLDAYS   *HELD     0:00:00  N  *NONE
   RRR        *SPLF      *ALLDAYS   *WAIT     0:00:00  N  the text
   SAMPLE     *JOB       SAMPLE     *HELD     0:00:00  N  Monitor SAMPLEJOB if r
                                                                        More...
```

The Work with Monitors display shows all entries for a monitor which you selected and defined to ICOM/400.

Monitor entries are parameters which include the name of the monitor, the type of monitor, the name of the schedule you want the monitor to follow, the scheduled times you want the monitor to be activated and a text description of the monitor.

You can set up an unlimited number of monitors with varying specifications. The appropriate monitor must be active to monitor and send messages from the monitors.

Message Queue Monitor



An example of a monitor is a message queue monitor.

Message queue entries are the parameters for a monitor which include such things as the job characteristics and Actions that will be applied to messages at the message queue. Messages are sent to the message queue via jobs you run or a scheduled job run by a job scheduler. If the message meets the specifications of the message queue monitor entry, the Action is performed.

You can set up an unlimited number of entries with varying specifications.

You will need to specify:

- *The name of the monitor*
- *The name of the message queue for the monitor*
- *The name of the library of the message queue*
- *The amount of time that you would like for ICOM/400 to pause between scanning the message queue for new messages*
- *The text which describes the monitor, and*
- *The sequence number of the message queue entry.*

You will also need to specify:

- *Filtering information such as the severity limit, Job name, user ID, program name, message type, and message ID*
- *The schedule assigned to the entry*
- *The Action assigned to the entry*
- *Whether ICOM/400 should continue processing the next sequence in the list of message queue monitor entries, discontinue after the current sequence number, or skip to a specific sequence number.*
- *Whether a message meeting the message queue monitor entry specifications should be excluded or included as a candidate for initiating an Action.*

Work with Actions

```
                              Work with Actions

Position to . . . . . .               Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add  2=Change  3=Copy  4=Remove  5=Display  7=Change command list

                Rcp
Opt Action      Type  Recipient   Reply       Cmd   Text

    BYTEST      *RCP  BYEMAIL     *NONE       *NO   *NONE
    CHECKJOB    *RCP  *NONE       *NONE       *YES  *NONE
    LANCE       *RCP  *NONE       *NONE       *YES  *NONE
    LBSNETF     *RCP  *NONE       *NONE       *YES  *NONE
    LBSTEST     *RCP  *NONE       *NONE       *YES  *NONE
    LBSTEST2    *RCP  *NONE       *NONE       *YES  *NONE
    LBSTEST3    *RCP  *NONE       *NONE       *YES  *NONE
    NETMSG      *RCP  NETMSG      *2WAY       *NO   *NONE
    REPLYTEST   *RCP  LANCE       *NONE       *NO   *NONE
    SAMPLE      *RCP  SAMPLE      *NONE       *NO   Sample action
```

The Work with Actions display shows all entries for Actions which are defined to ICOM/400.

Action entries are parameters which include such items as the name of the Action, the type of recipient, the name of the recipient you want the Action to affect, the message reply, whether a command needs to be executed and a text description of the Action.

You can set up an unlimited number of Actions with varying specifications.

Add Action

```
Add Action

Type choices, press Enter.

Action  . . . . . .                    Name
Send type . . . . . .   *RCP            *RCP, *GRP
Recipient/Group . . . . . .            Name, *ALL, *NONE, F4 ...
Selected recipients . . . . . .   *ALL  *ALL, *ONCALL
Message detail  . . . . . .   *JOBINF  *NONE, *JOBINF, *SECLVL..
Pre-defined message ID  . . . . . .   *NONE  Name, *NONE, F4 for list
Escalation table  . . . . . .   *RCP  Name, *NONE, *RCP, F4 ...
Message reply . . . . . .   *2WAY  Reply, *2WAY, *DFTRPY...
Use recipient pre/post information.   *NO  *NO, *YES
Delivery type . . . . . .   *RCP  *RCP, *EMAIL, F4 for list
```

The Add Action display allows you to add an Action and specify the parameters for the Action you want to add.

When adding an Action, you will be asked to specify:

- *The name of the Action*
- *Whether the Action is to notify a single recipient or a group of recipients*
- *The name of the recipient or group that the Action will notify*
- *Whether all recipients or only on-call recipients will be notified by this Action*
- *The level of message detail that you want to send for the specified Action*

You will also want to note:

- *The reply to be issued in response to an inquiry message*
- *Whether to use the recipient pre/post information for this Action*
- *The delivery method for the selected Action, and*
- *A time range that the Action is to be delayed. If you want to enable the delay range, you must specify a begin and end time.*

Change Command List

```
                            Change Command List

Action . . . . . . . . . . . . :  CHECKJOB
Text . . . . . . . . . . . . . :  *NONE


Type choices, press Enter.

  Seq    Command

   10    CALL ICOMTOOLS/CHKJOB PARM('QTCPIP' 'QSYSWRK')
```

The Change Command List display shows the current stored commands for the Action that you have selected. You can enter up to 999 commands for each Action. Each command line is assigned a sequence number. Commands can be added, changed or removed from the Change Command List display.

Note: On full screen edit displays, you must press Enter to save your changes, and Enter again to exit the display.

You will need to specify:

- The sequence number from 1 to 9999 in front of each entry
- The command that you want to associate with this Action.

Work with Schedules

```
                            Work with Schedules

Position to . . . . . .              Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add   2=Change   3=Copy   4=Remove   5=Display

Opt    Schedule      Text

       HMMMMM        *NONE
       LATEST        *NONE
       LBSSCHED      *NONE
       SAMPLE        Sample - off hours
       TEST          test
```

The Work with Schedules display shows all schedules that are defined. Schedules are user-defined groupings of dates that suggest when ICOM/400 processing should be used.

Schedules have many uses, including specifying a recipient's availability and on-call schedules, scheduling a monitor to monitor your job events, or for Message Queue and QHST entry scheduling.

The Work with Schedules display allows you to add, change, copy, remove or display schedules that you want to use for ICOM/400 processing.

The schedule name is user-defined. You can use a schedule to specifically include dates, such as all the days of the year that you want to utilize for notification purposes or special values such as *FRI (Friday) to specify days that you want ICOM/400 to utilize. For example, you could specify a schedule for Monday through Friday by specifying *MON, *TUE, *WED, *THU, and *FRI. This schedule would allow the messages to be issued to the appropriate recipient each Monday through Friday. You can also specify dates like 4/22/03 as dates to include in a schedule. You can add an unlimited number of specific dates and times to make up a schedule. You can also specify dates like 4/22, without a year, which indicates April 22nd of each year.

Automatic Delivery of Messages

You can customize ICOM/400 for your staff message delivery needs. Each recipient of a message can be specified with delivery types, schedules, escalation tables, and individual group affiliations.

Work with Recipients

```
                          Work with Recipients

Position to . . . . . .              Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add  2=Change  3=Copy  4=Remove  5=Display  7=Send message
  9=Edit authority

Opt Recipient   Escalation  Text

    BELLMAN     *NONE       *NONE
    BELLMAN2    *NONE       *NONE
    BELLSOUTH   *NONE       *NONE
    BOMB        *NONE       *NONE
    BYEMAIL     *NONE       briany@webzone.net
    BYMSGQ      *NONE       *NONE
    BYMSGQ2     *NONE       *NONE
    CANDICE     *NONE       *NONE
    DEONNA      *NONE       *NONE
    DEONNA2     *NONE       *NONE
```

To activate a recipient:

- *Specify the name of the recipient. (Recipients are people or locations to whom you have assigned delivery types and numbers so they can receive messages.) The recipient name is user-defined.*
- *The name of the escalation table for this recipient*
- *The text that describes the recipient*
- *The sequence number for the recipient entry*
- *The type of delivery method(s) for the recipient. These include:*
  - ⇒ **PAGER*
  - ⇒ **EMAIL*
  - ⇒ **PHONE*
  - ⇒ **MSGQ*
  - ⇒ **FAX*

⇒ **SPLF*
⇒ **NETMSG*

You will also need to:

- *Specify the schedule for which recipient will be available (this is the schedule from which the recipient will be available to receive messages).*
- *Specify the schedule for which the recipient will be on-call. (This is the schedule during which the recipient is on-call). Messages sent to on-call recipients would go to recipients that are on-call during the specified time period, and*
- *The exact address or number which is defined for the recipient delivery entry*

For paging, you must:

- *Specify the destination pager number*
- *Specify the pager company name of the pager. (For a list of pager companies, place the cursor on the Pager Company field and press F4), and*
- *Specify the type of pager for the recipient (either alpha or digital).*
- *Specify any pre- or post message information.*

For e-mail, you will need to:

- *Specify the e-mail address of the recipient, and*
- *Specify any pre- or post- message information*.

For telephones, you will need to:

- *Specify the phone number that is to be dialed*
- *Specify any pre- or post- message information.*

For message queues, you will need to:

- *Specify the message queue and library to which the recipient's messages are sent.*
- *Specify any pre- or post- message information*

For faxes, you will need to:

- *Specify the fax phone number that is to be dialed.*
- *Specify any pre- or post- message information.*

For spooled files, you will need to:

- *Specify the output queue and library.*
- *Specify the number of copies you want to produce.*
- *Specify the form type.*
- *Specify the user ID and address.*
- *Specify if you want to hold or save the spooled file.*
- *Specify any pre- or post- message information.*

For network messages, you will need to:

- *Specify the message queue and library.*
- *Specify the remote location name of the system where the message queue resides.*
- *Specify if you will allow replies to the message queue.*

Create Recipient Group

```
Create Recipient Group

Recipient group . . . .  TECHSUP
Text  . . . . . .

Type choices, press Enter.

  Seq    Recipient

   10    JULIA
   20    LANCE
   30    BYEMAIL
```

Recipient Groups consist of a group of recipients that you want to send a message to as a group, rather than having to send each member of the group an individual message.

To activate a recipient group, first:

- *Specify the name of the recipient group that you want to create. (Recipient Groups are logical groupings of people to which you may want to send the same message. You can have an unlimited number of recipient groups.)*
- *The description of the recipient group*
- *The sequence numbers of the entries. The lowest number indicates the entry that is to be processed first and the highest number indicates the entry is to be processed last, and*
- *The names of the recipients for the group*

NOTE: Before pager notification can begin, company information must be defined. Use the Work with Pager Companies to define these parameters.

Add Pager Company

```
                          Add Pager Company

Type choices, press Enter.

Pager company . . . . . .                Name
Contact name  . . . . . .
Address line 1  . . . . . .
Address line 2  . . . . . .
Computer phone number . . . . . .
2-way communication type  . . . . .   *NONE        *NONE, *BELLSOUTH
Mailbox user ID . . . . . .
Mailbox password  . . . . . .
Pager company password  . . . . . .               Characters
Maximum message length  . . . . . .   240         Number (1-999)
Maximum paging queue depth  . . . .     1         Number (1-999)
Maximum paging queue time . . . . .     0         Number (0-3600)
Maximum pages per connection  . . .   9999        Number (1-9999)
Number of retries . . . . . .           3         Number (1-9)
Limit one page per message  . . . .   *NO         *NO, *YES
Sending system  . . . . . .           *LCL        Name, *LCL
```

```
                          Add Pager Company

Type choices, press Enter.

Modem rate  . . . . . .    1200        300, 600, 1200, 2400, 9600
Parity  . . . . . .       *EVEN        *EVEN, *ODD, *NONE
Data bits . . . . . .     7            7, 8
Stop bits . . . . . .     1            1, 2
Duplex  . . . . . .       *FULL        *FULL, *HALF
Text  . . . . . .         *NONE
```

To add technical information about a pager company from which you rent or purchase pager equipment, go to the Work with Pager Companies Display.

You will need to specify:

- *The name of the pager company*
- *The name of the contact from the pager company (optional)*
- *The address for this pager company (also optional)*
- *The phone number of the computer that ICOM/400 will dial to establish communications with the pager company. (You can enter characters required to dial the computer phone number such as a 9 for an outside line. If a pause is required, you can use the "," character. Each comma will cause a one second delay.)*

  Note: You should not use dialing characters here if you are using two resources (have two lines). The dialing characters should be entered for each line in the Telephone prefix field in the Change System Attributes display.

- *The password required by the pager company, if any. (The password can be up to 10 characters in length.)*
- *The maximum message length for the pager company. (The message length specified can be from 1 to 999 characters.)*
- *The maximum number of messages that can enter the queue before the messages are transmitted for this company. (If the maximum number of messages is reached before the maximum queue time specified in the Maximum paging queue time field is reached, ICOM/400 will transmit the pagers, regardless of the specified paging queue time. The queue depth specified can be from 1 to 999.)*
- *The maximum number of time in seconds before messages that are in the queue for this company are transmitted. (If the maximum number of seconds is reached before the maximum number of pages specified in the Maximum paging queue depth field is reached, ICOM/400 will transmit the pages, regardless of the specified paging queue depth. The maximum time specified can be from 0 (send immediately) to 3600 seconds.)*
- *The maximum number of page messages that can be included in a transmission to the pager company. (You should contact your paging company to determine the maximum number of pages that they can handle in a single transmission. If you have set the maximum queue depth at 100 and specified maximum pages per connection of 10 for the pager company, ICOM/400 will break the 100 pages into 10 groups of 10.)*
- The number of times that ICOM/400 will re-dial the pager company. (ICOM/400 will continue re-dialing until a connection is made or the number of retries is exceeded. Specify a number from 1 to 9 retries)
- *Which system in the network sends messages for this company. (Messages can be entered from any terminal on your network. The messages are routed to the sending system by ICOM/400.)*

You will also need to specify:

- *The line speed that you want to use for pager equipment for this company. (i.e. — 1200 bytes per seconds, 300 bps, 600, etc.)*

- *The type of parity that you want to use for pager equipment for this company (Even, Odd, or None)*
- *The number of data bits that you want to use for pager equipment for this company (7 or 8)*
- *The number of stop bits that you want to use for pager equipment for this company (1 or 2)*
- *Whether or not the pager equipment for this company supports full (2 way communication) or half (one way communication) duplex.*

Work with Escalation Tables

```
                        Work with Escalation Tables

Position to . . . . . .              Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Create  2=Change  3=Copy  4=Remove  5=Display  6=Work with recipients

Opt    Table         Text

       BYTEST
       MONDAYS
       TEST
       WEEKENDS
```

An escalation table is a group of recipients to whom a message will escalate with the passage of time. An escalation table takes effect after the recipient to whom the message was sent originally does not respond before the number of minutes specified in the Delay field for the first recipient in the escalation table. Recipients in each table are ordered in the sequence that you want them to receive the message. A delay time is assigned between recipients to allow a recipient in the escalation table to respond to the message. Once a recipient responds to the message by acknowledging the message in the Work with History display, the escalation process ends. You can use special values to end the message when it has gone through the entire group once or to repeat the message until it is responded to by one of the recipients in the table.

Tracking and Reporting

ICOM/400 offers extensive tracking of the activity and history of ICOM/400 processing. ICOM/400 will also total history by message ID from QHST.

Work with Activity

Work with Activity is an important feature of ICOM/400. It allows you to work with activity that has occurred as a result of monitor initiated messages, as well as those generated by the user. You can keep track of activity generated by any monitor that you specify.

In the Work with Activity command display, you can specify activity for certain monitors, or all monitors; all monitor types, or only one type, such as a message queue monitor or a configuration status monitor; you can set date limits on the activity you want to work with, or you can work with all available activity. You may print this activity to a spool file, or view it right there on the screen.

The Work with Activity display shows all the activity that you specified in the WRKATVICM command. With this activity, you can view individual messages and the message detail of those messages. This display will show you the time and date the message was sent, as well as the text of the message itself. From this screen, you can acknowledge a message if it has been escalated, or you can remove messages.

Networking

ICOM/400 allows you to send messages to other AS/400s in your network. You can send a network message from one system to a message queue in another system.

Work with History Menu

The History Information menu allows you to review, analyze, print and dispose of information stored in the ICOM/400 history file.

Work with History

```
                                Work with History
                                                              3/23/03  17:03:32
 Position to Date . . . . .

 Type options, press Enter.
   3=Hold     4=Remove     5=Display     6=Release     7=Resend message
   8=Display escalation    9=Acknowledge

     Entry     Entry    Delivery            Escalation   Entry
Opt  Date      Time       Type    Recipient  Status       Status   Message
    3/15/03  11:13:29  *EMAIL     *NONE      None         Sent     Sierra Pacifi
    3/17/03  14:00:17  *EMAIL     *NONE      None         Sent     *NONE
    3/17/03  15:56:35  *NETMSG    LANCENET   None         Sent     MBABKY 021804
    3/17/03  16:00:11  *NETMSG    LANCENET   None         Sent     MBABKY 021804
    3/18/03  10:58:07  *PAGER     TESTR      None         Sent     test from Lan
    3/18/03  15:19:07  *EMAIL     BYEMAIL    None         Sent     CPF0907 Serio
    3/18/03  15:22:26  *EMAIL     BYEMAIL    None         Sent     022052/BRIAN/
    3/23/03   9:54:03  *FAX       SAMPLE     None         Sent     test
    3/23/03  10:33:51  *EMAIL     *NONE      None         Sent     from sndmsgic
    3/23/03  10:34:15  *EMAIL     BYEMAIL    None         Sent     *NONE
```

The Work with History using ICM display shows all messages that you requested as a result of processing the Work with History using ICM (WRKHSTICM) command or as a result of selecting a menu option to work with history. The display can contain all messages, regardless of status or can be conditioned to only include selected messages, a date range of messages and so on. The time and date of the entry, along with its current status and contents are shown.

Display Escalation Information

```
                        Display Escalation Information

   Message ID number  . . : 1028440         Escalation status  . . : None
   Sent from                                Acknowledged by  . . . :
     Job  . . . . . . . . : QPADEV0007      Table passes . . . . . :     1
       User . . . . . . . :   LANCE         Entries generated  . . :     1
       Number . . . . . . :   020023        Entries processed  . . :     0
   Escalation table . . . : *NONE

     Entry     Entry    Delivery            Escalation   Entry
Opt  Date      Time       Type    Recipient  Status       Status   Message
 8  3/10/03  10:28:44  *NETMSG    LANCE      Escalated    Error    MBABKY 020023
 8  3/10/03  10:33:35  *EMAIL     JULIA      Escalated    Error    MBABKY 020023
 8  3/10/03  10:38:43  *PAGER     LANCE      Acknowledged Error    MBABKY 020023
```

The Display Escalation Information display shows escalation detail about a message that you have selected.

This display includes:

- *The internal number generated by ICOM/400 to track this message*
- *The job name that sent the message*
- *The user name that sent the message*
- *The number of the job that sent the message*
- *The name of the escalation table used with this message*
- *The escalation status of the message*
- *The user ID of the person who acknowledged the message*
- *The number of passes through the specified escalation table*
- *The number of entries generated so far within this escalation process*
- *The total number of entries that have been processed so far.*

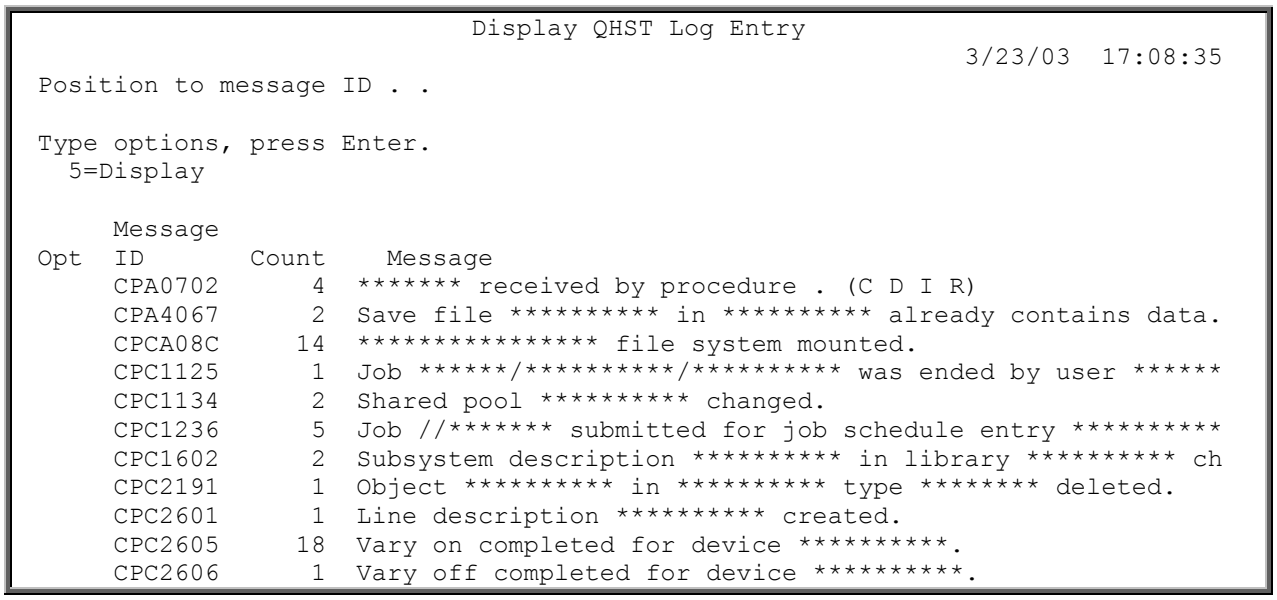
Display ICM Log Information

```
3/23/03                 Display ICM Log Information
17:07:40                                        Position to . . . .
3/23/03

-------------------------------  3/23/03 ----------------------------------
-
Monitor TSTJOB type *JOB held.
Sending spooled file QPUOPRTF number 0002 for job 019891/BRIAN/QPADEV0017.
ATTACH sent to briany@webzone.net.
1 type *EMAIL sent, 0 spooled file pages not sent.
Recipient SAMPLE changed.
User message initiated by LANCE at  3/23/03 09:49:07.
Recipient SAMPLE notified by delivery type *FAX.
Error creating line description ICOM4005.
Fax error
Value '          ' for parameter RSRCNAME not a valid name.
Error found on CRTLINASC command.
Value '          ' for parameter RSRCNAME not a valid name.
Error found on CRTLINASC command.
Sending message to recipient SAMPLE.
```

The Display ICM Log Information display is a result of processing the Display Log using ICM (DSPLOGICM) command. Based on parameters requested in the command, the display lists text messages associated with ICOM/400 processing. You can specify a severity level for the messages to be included in the display. Messages with severity levels equal to or greater than the selected severity level will be included in the display. For example, if you specified 30, all messages with a severity of 30 or higher would be selected for the display. If the display does not contain the information needed, you can run the command additional times with different parameter values specified.

For any message that you want to see additional information, press Help or F1 and you are taken to the Additional ICM Log Information display where you can review the entire message plus any additional information that is available.

Display QHST Log Entry



```
                          Display QHST Log Entry
                                                          3/23/03  17:08:35
Position to message ID . .

Type options, press Enter.
  5=Display

     Message
Opt  ID       Count    Message
     CPA0702      4  ******* received by procedure . (C D I R)
     CPA4067      2  Save file ********** in ********** already contains data.
     CPCA08C     14  ********** file system mounted.
     CPC1125      1  Job ******/**********/********** was ended by user ******
     CPC1134      2  Shared pool ********** changed.
     CPC1236      5  Job //******* submitted for job schedule entry **********
     CPC1602      2  Subsystem description ********** in library ********** ch
     CPC2191      1  Object ********** in ********** type ******** deleted.
     CPC2601      1  Line description ********** created.
     CPC2605     18  Vary on completed for device **********.
     CPC2606      1  Vary off completed for device **********.
```

The Display QHST Log Entry display is a result of processing the Display QHST using ICM (DSPQHSTICM) command. Based on parameters requested in the command, the display lists text messages associated with processing. For example, if you specified 30, all messages with a severity of 30 or higher would be selected for the display. If the display does not contain the information needed, you can run the command additional times with different parameter values specified.

Service

ICOM/400 represents the first word in service and support for AS/400 monitoring and messaging. ICOM/400:

- *Requires no special hardware or communications equipment*
- *Is SAA/CUA compliant*
- *Has multi-level security*
- *Has integrated security features*
- *Can be integrated with IBM BRMS*
- *Can be integrated with IBM Job Scheduler or any scheduler*
- *Has a central site that can manage all messages*

With ICOM/400, you get:

- *15 months FREE maintenance*
- *90 Day money back guarantee*
- *No additional charges for upgrades with current maintenance program*
- *24 hour support line*
- *PTFs received electronically*

Product Warranty and Support

Product Support Worldwide

Pinnacle support offers you a wide range of choices and access to experienced, responsive technical support personnel. ICOM/400 comes with cursor-sensitive on-line help text as well as comprehensive user documentation. Displays are easy to understand and use.

When You Have A Question

- *Check the on-line help text.*
- *Consult the ICOM/400 documentation and other printed information included with ICOM/400.*
- *Review electronic options using Automated Customer Support (ACS). This is accessed by option 30 from the Main Menu and will allow you to:*
- *Display answers to commonly asked questions using the Q&A database*
- *Send a message to Technical Support*
- *Page a Technical Support person in emergency situations.*
- *Or call our Technical Support staff at (918) 587-1500*

Remote Customer Support

Automated Customer Support (ACS) is designed to permit remote user access to the Pinnacle customer support AS/400. This product is offered at no charge to customers who are under a software maintenance license agreement.

ACS is automatically installed at ICOM/400 installation time. It provides menu screens to assist you in defining ACS connectivity to the Pinnacle customer support machine and in ordering any necessary enhancements or corrections (PTFs) to Pinnacle software products.

ACS allows you to:

- *Order PTFs for any AS/Manager product*
- *Send a message to technical support*
- *Page a technical support representative for emergencies*
- *Ask questions or search for answers on Q&A database.*

Quick Start Wizard

ICOM/400 offers a comprehensive set-up feature called Quick Start Wizard. ICOM/400 Quick Start Wizard will take you through the steps necessary to deliver messages via e-mail, pager, message queue, or to ring a telephone.

With Quick Start Wizard, you can configure your e-mail server, asynchronous modem, line resource description, and pager company. You can add recipients and the delivery types for each recipient (such as e-mail, pager, message queue and telephone notification.) You can also send a message to test the various delivery types.

Chapter 2 - ICOM/400 Installation

ICOM/400 will automatically install for a user with *ALLOBJ authority, such as QSECOFR. You will need the following items for a successful installation.

ICOM/400 Requirements

- An IBM AS/400 running one of the following versions of OS/400:

Page/Manager	ICOM/400	OS/400
V 3 R 0		V 3 R 7
	V 3 R 0	V 3 R 7
	V 3 R 1	V 4 R 5

- **CISC** — 16 MB DASD
- **RISC** — 21 MB DASD

E-mail Requirements

- A TCP/IP connection
- Your ISP's mail host server address and port number
- The E-mail addresses of all the recipients

Paging Requirements

- A free V.24 communications port. **NOTE**: We suggest that you have a dedicated communications line (this is preferred, not required.)
- An asynchronous modem. The modem speed will be determined by your paging company (2400 Baud is standard). Most synchronous modems can be set to asynchronous mode. If you plan to share a modem for both synchronous and asynchronous modes, you will be required to reset the modem between uses. **NOTE: See modem configuration at the end of this chapter for further explanation.**
- Digital or alphanumeric pagers and paging service from a local provider. If you have more than one paging service, you will need information on each of them. If you do not have a paging service, you can choose from several in your local area. Consult the yellow pages or call one of these national services: PageNet: 1-800-724-3638; MobilComm: 1-800-879-7585; AT&T: 1-800-724-7784.
- The name, contact name, computer modem phone number, computer password (if any), modem rate and settings for each paging company you will be using.
- The pager id (usually the pager number) for each recipient.

Faxing Requirements

- Operating system requirements: OS/400 v3r7 or higher
- Software-standard class 2 or 2.0 asynchronous modem
- A free V.24 communications port.
  NOTE: We suggest that you have a dedicated communications line (this is preferred, not required.

ICOM/400 Installation

First Installation — CD

1. Load CD into the CD-ROM drive
2. Enter the following command: **`LODRUN DEV(*OPT)`**
3. The CD-ROM product installation menu is displayed. To install ICOM/400, please enter a 1 beside ICOM/400.
4. The product information will automatically be installed.
5. Use the command GO ICM to access the ICOM/400 Main Menu.

First Installation — Tape

1. Load tape in the appropriate drive
2. At the command line type: **`RSTLIB SAVLIB(MBAINST) DEV(device name)`**
3. Execute the install command:
   `MBAINST/MBAINST PRODUCT(ICM) ACTION(*INSTALL) DEV(device name)`
4. Use the command GO ICM to access the ICOM/400 Main Menu.

Upgrade

1. Back-up your current ICOM/400 system (library ICOM400) or Page/Manager system (library PAGEMGR).
2. Follow steps for the proper media format above.
3. **NOTE**: If you are upgrading to a new system, you will need to restore the old product library on the new system before proceeding with step 1.

Internet Download Installation

1. At the AS/400 command prompt, type: **`CRTLIB ICMTRIAL`**, then: **`CRTSAVF ICMTRIAL/ICMPACK`**
2. Go to the Pinnacle website at http://www.pbsnow.com, go to "Products." Go to "ICOM/400" and click on "Download your 30-day free trial" at the bottom of the page. You will be asked to register before download. Follow the instructions for download.
3. After downloading, open a DOS session on the PC and at the prompt type: ***cd/****[name of directory where you downloaded the file]*
4. Then type: ***FTP*** *[name of your AS/400 or its TCP/IP address]*
5. Type your AS/400 user profile and press enter. Type your password and press Enter.
6. Type: *bin*
7. Type: *put* ***ICMPACK.SAV ICMTRIAL/ICMPACK.SAVF***
8. Type: ***quit*** and press enter, then: ***exit*** and press enter
9. Back at the AS/400 command prompt, type:

   `RSTOBJ OBJ(*ALL) SAVLIB (ICMTRIAL) DEV(*SAVF) SAVF (ICMTRIAL/ICMPACK)`

10. You should receive a message indicating that five objects were restored.

    Note: You may see a security message. Don't be alarmed.
    Note: If you are currently running ICOM/400, you must **`ENDSBS ZICOM400 *IMMED`** before proceeding to step 11.

11. Type: **CALL *ICMTRIAL/ICMINST***
12. Type **GO ICM** to reach ICOM/400's Main Menu.

NOTE: After installation is finished, you will be directed to ICOM/400's Quick Start Wizard feature. If you do not wish to use the Quick Start wizard because you had a previous version of ICOM/400 with all your setup values pre-installed, then simply press F3 and exit w/out saving. If this is your first install, Quick Start Wizard will take you through ICOM/400 set-up quickly and easily. Once you have finished Quick Start Wizard, you will be taken to the Main Menu. From that point on, when you type **GO ICM**, you will be taken to the Main Menu. If you wish to access the Quick Start Wizard at any time after that, select option 20 from the Main Menu. If Option 20 does not exist, type in the following command: **CRTDTAARA DTAARA(ICOM400/ICMQS) TYPE(*CHAR) Len(1)**

ICOM/400 Voice Installation

See Appendix B for more information on installing ICOM/400 Voice.

ICOM/400 Quick Start Wizard

The ICOM/400 Quick Start Wizard will take you through all the necessary steps needed to get started using the program. Please follow the steps provided. Press F3 to exit the Quick Start Wizard, or F12 to go back to a previous screen. The Quick Start Wizard includes many examples and is self-explanatory. If, after you have finished the Quick Start Wizard and would like to go back and change something, simply choose Option 20 from the ICOM/400 Main Menu. If Option 20 does not exit, Enter the following command: **CRTDTAARA DTAARA(ICOM400/ICMQS) TYPE(*CHAR) Len(1)**

Quick Start Wizard display 1:

```
ICOM/400 Quick Start Wizard will take you through the steps necessary to
deliver messages via e-mail, pager, message queue, or to ring a telephone.
The first step will be to set specific system attributes that can be used
by recipients.  Then we will define individual recipient information.

If this is an upgrade of the software and you do not want to use Quick
Start Wizard to make any changes to your existing setup or you would like
to just exit now then press F3. Otherwise, press enter to continue.
```

NOTE: If you are upgrading ICOM/400 to a newer version, you do not need to run Quick Start Wizard if you choose not too. Running Quick Start Wizard will make changes to your existing setup.

The first display explains the purpose of Quick Start Wizard:

ICOM/400 Quick Start Wizard will take you through the steps necessary to deliver messages via e-mail, pager, message queue, or to ring a telephone. The first step will be to set specific system attributes that can be used by recipients. Then we will define individual recipient information.

If this is not your first time to run the Quick Start Wizard, the following screen will be the first screen.

```
ICOM/400 Quick Start Wizard will take you through the steps necessary to
Deliver messages via e-mail, pager, message queue, or to ring a telephone.
The first step will be to set specific system attributes that can be used
by recipients.  Then we will define individual recipient information.

Would you like to send e-mail messages (y/n)? . . . .  Y
```

You are asked to specify if you would like to send e-mail messages. If you would, simply type a **Y** in the space provided. If not, type an **N** to skip this step. Press Enter.

Quick Start Wizard display 2:

```
ICOM/400 will send messages to an e-mail address.  To accomplish this, you
must define your SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) server's TCP/IP
address to ICOM/400.  If your AS/400 is in a network that is connected to
the Internet, you will receive the best performance by specifying your
ISP's (Internet Service Provider) mail server address.  Should your AS/400
be protected by a firewall, your mail administrator will be able to provide
the appropiate TCP/IP address and port number.


SMTP host server address . .   smtp.webzone.net
POP3 Host server address . .   pop3.webzone.net
ICOM/400 e-mail address  . .   icom@pbsnow.com
Account name . . . . . .   icom
Password . . . . . .   icom400

For example:
  SMTP host server address :   mail.pbsnow.com
  POP3 host server address :   pop3.pbsnow.com
  ICOM/400 e-mail address  :   support@pbsnow.com
```

If you choose to send e-mail messages, the next display will appear. You are asked to provide five things:

- Mail host server address (i.e. mail.pbsnow.com)
- Mail host port (i.e. 25)
- Error e-mail address (i.e. support@pbsnow.com)
- Account name
- Account password

Please refer to the example given at the bottom of the screen. Press Enter when you are finished entering the information.

Quick Start Wizard display 3:

```
ICOM/400 Quick Start Wizard will take you through the steps necessary to
deliver messages via e-mail, pager, message queue, or to ring a telephone.
The first step will be to set specific system attributes that can be used
by recipients.  Then we will define individual recipient information.


Would you like to send e-mail messages (y/n)? . . . :  Y

Would you like to send fax messages (y/n)?  . . . .    Y
```

This display is the same as the first, but asks if you would like to send fax messages. If you would, enter a **Y** in the space provided; otherwise enter an **N**. If you choose to send fax messages**,** you will be taken to the Line Resource display. If not, you will skip this step. Press Enter.

Quick Start Wizard display 4:

```
ICOM/400 automatically creates an asynchronous line description named
ICOM4005.  This line description is used only by ICOM/400 and needs
no configuration.  Should it be deleted, it will automatically be
re-created when the next fax is sent by ICOM/400.

Line description resource name . . .   CMN01        Name, F4 for list
```

The fourth display asks you to specify a Line Description Resource Name for the asynchronous line description provided by ICOM/400 upon installation. If you cannot provide a name, place your cursor on the field and press F4 for a list of pre-defined names. Once you have selected a name, press Enter.

Quick Start Wizard display 5:

```
ICOM/400 automatically creates an asynchronous line description named
ICOM4005.  This line description is used only by ICOM/400 and needs
no configuration.  Should it be deleted, it will automatically be
re-created when the next fax is sent by ICOM/400.

Line description resource name . . :   CMN01


Depending upon your phone system, it may be necessary to use a telephone
prefix.  An example would be to dial a 9 to access an outside line,
or, possibly a code used for tracking or billing purposes.  Commas can be
used when a pause is required before dialing the telephone number.  Each
comma will cause a one second delay.

Telephone prefix . . . . . .   9,
```

The next display asks you to provide a telephone pre-fix for the telephone line you will be using with ICOM/400. A pre-fix is something that needs to be placed in front of the telephone number that you will dial with your AS/400 modem. For example, in order to get an outside line to use the modem, many times a 9 (or something similar) needs to placed in front of the telephone number. If this is the case, specify the character, along with a comma for a pause. Each comma equals a one second delay before a telephone number is dialed. Press Enter to proceed to the next display.

Quick Start Wizard display 6:

```
ICOM/400 automatically creates an asynchronous line description named
ICOM4005.  This line description is used only by ICOM/400 and needs
no configuration.  Should it be deleted, it will automatically be
re-created when the next fax is sent by ICOM/400.

Company name . . . . . .   Pinnacle Business Systems

Return fax number. . . . . .   5871578

Baud rate. . . . . .    9600          2400, 4800, 7200...
```

This display prompts you for a company name and return fax number and the baud rate for your modem. The return fax number is the number that will be displayed as the number of the company sending the fax.

Quick Start Wizard display 7:

```
ICOM/400 requires that you set your modem to asynchronous mode.  Enter an
 option 1 next to the modem for setup instructions and other information.

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Select

Opt Manufacturer/Model
    IBM 7852
```

This display requires that the modem that you will be using with ICOM/400 be set to asynchronous mode. Select a modem from the list provided and follow the directions for setting your modem to asynchronous mode.

If your modem is not provided, select **Other** and follow the instructions given.

Press Enter to proceed.

Quick Start Wizard display 8:

```
ICOM/400 automatically creates an asynchronous line description named
ICOM4005.  This line description is used only by ICOM/400 and needs
no configuration.  Should it be deleted, it will automatically be
re-created when the next pager message is sent by ICOM/400.

Line description resource name . . :   CMN01

Do you want to test varying on the line (y/n)? . . .  Y
```

This display asks you if you want to test varying on the line that you specified. If you do, place a **Y** in the space provided; otherwise, put an **N**. If you choose to test the line, ICOM/400 will take a few moments to vary on the line. If there is a problem with varying on the line, a display will come up with suggestions on how to fix it. If there are no problems, press Enter to proceed to the next display.

Quick Start Wizard display 9*:*

```
ICOM/400 Quick Start Wizard will take you through the steps necessary to
deliver messages via e-mail, pager, message queue, or to ring a telephone.
The first step will be to set specific system attributes that can be used
by recipients.  Then we will define individual recipient information.


Would you like to send e-mail messages (y/n)? . . . :  Y

Would you like to send fax messages (y/n)?  . . . .    Y

Would you like to send pager messages (y/n)?  . . . .  Y
```

The next display is the same as the first. However, this display asks if you would like to send pager messages. If you would, enter a **Y** in the space provided; otherwise enter an **N**. If you want to send pager messages**,** you will be taken to the Line Resource display. If you do not, you will skip this step. Press Enter.

Quick Start Wizard display 10:

```
ICOM/400 automatically creates an asynchronous line description named
ICOM400.  This line description is used only by ICOM/400 and needs
no configuration.  Should it be deleted, it will automatically be
re-created when the next pager message is sent by ICOM/400.

Line description resource name . . .   CMN01        Name, F4 for list
```

This display asks you to specify a Line Description Resource Name for the asynchronous line description provided by ICOM/400 upon installation. If you cannot provide a name, place your cursor on the field and press F4 for a list of pre-defined names. Once you have selected a name, press Enter.

Quick Start Wizard display 11:

```
ICOM/400 automatically creates an asynchronous line description named
ICOM400.  This line description is used only by ICOM/400 and needs
no configuration.  Should it be deleted, it will automatically be
re-created when the next pager message is sent by ICOM/400.

Line description resource name . . :   CMN01


Depending upon your phone system, it may be necessary to use a telephone
prefix.  An example would be to dial a 9 to access an outside line,
or, possibly a code used for tracking or billing purposes.  Commas can be
used when a pause is required before dialing the telephone number.  Each
comma will cause a one second delay.

Telephone prefix . . . . . .
```

The next display asks you to provide a telephone pre-fix for the telephone line you will be using with ICOM/400. A pre-fix is something that needs to be placed in front of the telephone number that you will dial with your AS/400 modem. For example, in order to get an outside line to use the modem, many times a 9 (or something similar) needs to be placed in front of the telephone number. If this is the case, specify the character, along with a comma for a pause. Each comma equals a one second delay before a telephone number is dialed.

Press Enter to proceed to the next display.

Quick Start Wizard display 12:

```
ICOM/400 requires that you set your modem to asynchronous mode.  Enter an
 option 1 next to the modem for setup instructions and other information.

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Select

Opt Manufacturer/Model
    Boca modem
    IBM 5853
    IBM 7852
    IBM 7855
    Microcom 28000
    US Robotics Sportster
    Other
```

This display requires that the modem that you will be using with ICOM/400 be set to asynchronous mode. Select a modem from the list provided and follow the directions for setting your modem to asynchronous mode.

If your modem is not provided, select **Other** and follow the instructions given.

Press Enter when finished.

Quick Start Wizard display 13:

```
ICOM/400 automatically creates an asynchronous line description named
ICOM400.  This line description is used only by ICOM/400 and needs
no configuration.  Should it be deleted, it will automatically be
re-created when the next pager message is sent by ICOM/400.

Line description resource name . . :   CMN01

Do you want to test varying on the line (y/n)? . . .  Y
```

This display asks you if you want to test varying on the line that you specified. If you do, place a **Y** in the space provided; otherwise, put an **N**. If you choose to test the line, ICOM/400 will take a few moments to vary on the line. If there is a problem with varying on the line, a display will come up with suggestions on how to fix it. If there are no problems, press Enter to proceed to the next display.

Quick Start Wizard display 14:

```
ICOM/400 typically does not communicate directly with a pager or a
digital phone that receives pages, but rather with a paging company
or service.  We electronically transmit the recipient ID and message
to the paging company or service, who, in turn, transmits the message
to the specified recipient ID.  Many of the communication configuration
settings are specified by the paging company or service.  ICOM/400 has
many paging companies and their respective configurations stored for
your convenience.

Pager company  . . . . . .   *NONE        Name, F4 for list
```

This display explains that ICOM/400 does not typically communicate directly with a pager, but uses a pager company. You are asked to provide a pager company. Type the name of the pager company and press Enter. If you do not know the name of the pager company you will use, place the cursor on the Pager company field and press F4. A list of several pager companies will appear. If the pager company you are using is on the list, simply place a 1 by the company and press Enter. All the settings are pre-configured so that no extra configuration is necessary. If your pager company is not on the list, place a 1 beside Add new company and press Enter. You will be taken to the Add Pager Company display where you will be prompted to provide certain information about your pager company.

Quick Start Wizard display 15:

```
ICOM/400 Quick Start Wizard will take you through the steps necessary to
deliver messages via e-mail, pager, message queue, ring a telephone or
fax.
The first step will be to set specific system attributes that can be used
by recipients.  Then we will define individual recipient information.


Would you like to send e-mail messages (y/n)? . . . :  Y

Would you like to send fax messages (y/n)?  . . . .    Y

Would you like to send pager messages (y/n)?  . . . :  Y

Would you like to add recipients (y/n)? . . . . . .  Y
```

This display inquires if you would like to add recipients to ICOM/400. If you would, place a **Y** in the space provided. If you do not, place an **N**. If you do want to add recipients, you will be taken to the next display; otherwise, you will skip this step. Press Enter.

Quick Start Wizard display 16:

```
A recipient is a person, group of persons or a device to whom you want
to deliver a pager message, AS/400 message, e-mail message, ring a
telephone or fax.  Recipients can have multiple delivery methods,
i.e. pager, e-mail, etc.

Enter the recipient name . . . . . .              Leave blank when done.
```

This display explains that a recipient is a person, group of persons, or a device to which you send a message (be it by pager, e-mail, or message queue) or ring a telephone (analog phone). A recipient can have more than one delivery method. You are asked to provide a recipient name. After specifying the various delivery methods, you can add as many recipients as you need.

Press Enter to proceed to the next display.

Quick Start Wizard display 17:

```
A recipient is a person, group of persons or a device to whom you want
to deliver a pager message, AS/400 message, e-mail message, ring a
telephone or fax.  Recipients can have multiple delivery methods,
i.e. pager, e-mail, etc.

Enter the recipient name . . . . . :   JULIA

If this delivery method is not needed, leave blank and press Enter
to continue.

E-mail address . . . . . .
```

This display asks you to provide an e-mail address (i.e. support@pbsnow.com) for the recipient you are adding. If you do not want the recipient to receive e-mail messages or do not have an internet connection, simply leave this field blank. Press Enter.

Quick Start Wizard display 18:

```
A recipient is a person, group of persons or a device to whom you want
to deliver a pager message, AS/400 message, e-mail message, ring a
telephone or fax.  Recipients can have multiple delivery methods,
i.e. pager, e-mail, etc.

Enter the recipient name . . . . . :   JULIA

If this delivery method is not needed, leave blank and press Enter
to continue.

Fax telephone number . . . . . .
```

This display asks to provide a fax telephone number for your recipient. This will be the fax number to which ICOM/400 notifications are sent. If you do not wish to set up a fax delivery method for this recipient, leave the field blank.

Quick Start Wizard display 19:

```
A recipient is a person, group of persons or a device to whom you want
to deliver a pager message, AS/400 message, e-mail message, ring a
telephone or fax.  Recipients can have multiple delivery methods,
i.e. pager, e-mail, etc.

Enter the recipient name . . . . . :   JULIA

A Pager ID is required for paging and is assigned to the recipient by the
paging company. Typically it is a seven digit number, usually a phone
number that can be used to send a numeric page from a touch tone phone to
alpha-numeric or digital pagers. However, some paging companies do use
five digit pager ids with alpha-numeric pagers. If this delivery method
is not needed, leave blank and press Enter to continue.

Pager ID . . . . . .
Pager type . . . . . .   A       (A for Alpha, D for
Digital)
```

This display asks you to provide a Pager ID for the recipient you are adding. Typically, the ID is a seven digit number (i.e. telephone number) which will indicate which pager is to receive the pager message. If you do not want the recipient to receive pager messages, simply leave this field blank. Press Enter.

Quick Start Wizard display 20:

```
A recipient is a person, group of persons or a device to whom you want
 to deliver a pager message, AS/400 message, e-mail message, ring a
 telephone or fax.  Recipients can have multiple delivery methods,
 i.e. pager, e-mail, etc.

 Enter the recipient name . . . . . :   JULIA

 A telephone number is required for each recipient you want to utilize
 the telephone notification.  Typically this is a seven digit number.
 However, it may be a '1' followed by the area code then the seven digit
 number.  If this delivery method is not needed, leave blank and press
 Enter to continue.

 Telephone number . . . . . .
```

This display asks you to provide a telephone number for the recipient you are adding. ICOM/400 will ring a telephone as a notification. If you do not want the recipient to receive telephone notifications, simply leave this field blank. Press Enter.

Quick Start Wizard display 21:

```
A recipient is a person, group of persons or a device to whom you want
to deliver a pager message, AS/400 message, e-mail message, ring a
telephone or fax.  Recipients can have multiple delivery methods,
i.e. pager, e-mail, etc.

Enter the recipient name . .  JULIA

If this delivery method is not needed, leave blank and press Enter to
continue.

Message queue  . . . . . .
  Library  . . . . . .
```

This display asks you to provide a message queue and library for the recipient you are adding. This allows you to send a message to a specific message queue. If you do not want the recipient to receive message queue messages, simply leave this field blank.

Quick Start Wizard display 22:

```
A recipient is a person, group of persons or a device to whom you want
to deliver a pager message, AS/400 message, e-mail message, ring a
telephone or fax.  Recipients can have multiple delivery methods,
i.e. pager, e-mail, etc.

Enter the recipient name . .  JULIA

If this delivery method is not needed, leave blank and press Enter to
continue.

Output queue . . . . . .
  Library  . . . . . .
```

This display asks you to provide an output queue and library for the recipient you are adding. This allows you to send a spooled file to a specific output queue. If you do not want the recipient to receive spooled files, simply leave this field blank.

You can now add additional recipients and delivery methods. When you are finished, simply leave the Recipient field blank and press Enter.

Quick Start Wizard display 23:

```
A recipient is a person, group of persons or a device to whom you want
to deliver a pager message, AS/400 message, e-mail message, ring a
telephone or fax.  Recipients can have multiple delivery methods,
i.e. pager, e-mail, etc.

Enter the recipient name . .  JULIA

A remote system message queue and library name are needed below if
you would like to send a message to a remote system. If this delivery
method is not needed, then leave blank and press Enter to continue


Message queue  . . . . . .
  Library  . . . . . .
Remote location name . . . . . .
```

This display asks you to provide a remote message queue and library for the recipient you are adding. This allows you to send a message to a specific message queue on a remote system. If you do not want the recipient to receive remote messages, simply leave this field blank.

You can now add additional recipients and delivery methods. When you are finished, simply leave the Recipient field blank and press Enter.

Quick Start Wizard display 24:

```
ICOM/400 Quick Start Wizard will take you through the steps necessary to
deliver messages via e-mail, pager, message queue, or to ring a telephone.
The first step will be to set specific system attributes that can be used
by recipients.  Then we will define individual recipient information.


Would you like to send e-mail messages (y/n)? . . . :  Y

Would you like to send fax messages (y/n)?  . . . .    Y

Would you like to send pager messages (y/n)?  . . . :  Y

Would you like to add recipients (y/n)? . . . . . :  Y

Would you like to send a test message (y/n)?  . . . .  Y
```

You are now asked if you would like to send a test message. If you do, place a **Y** in the space provided; otherwise put an **N.** If you choose to send a test message, you will be asked to provide additional information. If you choose not to send a test message, you are finished setting up ICOM/400 and are taken to Quick Start Wizard display #27.

Quick Start Wizard display 25:

```
Enter recipient name for test  . . .                Name, F4 for list
```

To send a test message, you must enter a recipient in the space provided. For a list, place your cursor on the field and press Enter.

Quick Start Wizard display 26:

```
ICOM/400 Quick Start Wizard will take you through the process to test each
delivery method for the recipient you selected.  Enter 'y' for each method
that you want to test.

Test net message delivery (y/n)?  . . . . . .   Y
```

You are now asked which delivery method you would like to utilize in testing ICOM/400. You will only be prompted for those methods set-up for the recipient to which you are sending the test message. After you have specified which delivery methods to use, ICOM/400 will send the test message(s) and you are taken to the final Quick Start Wizard Display.

Quick Start Wizard display 27:

```
Congratulations!

You have now completed the initial setup of ICOM/400.

Any recipients that you may have set up can now be sent
messages.

To check the status of the test messages, select option 2
from the Main Menu or Enter command WRKHSTICM.  To assist
in problem solving, select option 5 (History Information)
from the Main Menu to see the ICOM/400 log.

Press Enter to exit Quick Start Wizard.
```

Congratulations! You have now completed the initial setup of ICOM/400. Any recipients that you may have set up can now be sent messages.

To check the status of the test messages (if any were sent), select option 2 from the Main Menu or Enter command WRKHSTICM. To assist in problem solving, select option 5 (History Information) from the Main Menu to see the ICOM/400 log.

Press Enter to exit Quick Start Wizard.

Advanced Set-up

ICOM/400 can be set-up through the Quick Start Wizard (Main Menu, Option 20). However, if after going through Quick Start Wizard, you would like to set-up some of the more advanced features of ICOM/400 or change any information specified in Quick Start Wizard, follow the steps outlined below.

Modem Configuration

An asynchronous modem must be attached to your system in order to use ICOM/400. To configure you modem to asynchronous mode, please follow the instructions at the end of this chapter.

ICOM/400 is capable of support a variety of asynchronous modems and is limited only by the requirements of your AS/400. Some types of modems require a more complex configuration than others and therefore more initial set-up time. You must use a PC application (such as Terminal or HyperTerminal) that will allows you to issue a string of AT commands.

Here are a few modem configurations:

IBM 5853 Modem
To configure the IBM 5853 modem for use with ICOM/400, all of the front panel buttons must be in the released position. The "A/S" button switches between Asynchronous (OUT) and Synchronous (IN) operating modes and must be in Asynchronous (OUT) position. See the end of this chapter for an illustration of the settings.

IBM 7855-10 Modem
To configure the IBM 7855-10 modem for use with ICOM/400, the modem must be configured in an asynchronous operating mode. The IBM 7855-10 can be configured via the four directional buttons on the front of the modem. See the end of this chapter for an illustration of the settings.

Other asynchronous modems
See the Modem configuration at the end of this chapter.

Line Description Information

Line description information can be inputted from the Change System Attributes display (from the Main Menu, take Option 7 System Controls, and then Option 1 System Attributes). This display allows you to change the ICOM/400 defaults or the line resource description that you set up with Quick Start Wizard. Change a default value here affects your entire system.

Resources 1 and 2 allow you to specify multiple lines that can be used for communications.

Also, from the Change System Attributes display, input any necessary pre– and post-modem instructions. These will be defined by your paging service.

Pager Companies

There are two General Set-up worksheets at the end of this manual. Use the first worksheet to enter the specified information about each pager company or service that you use. You will then input this information on the Add Pager Company display (From the Main Menu, take Option 4 Recipient Information, and then Option 4 Work with pager companies.)

E-mail

The second General Set-up worksheet at the end of the manual is for e-mail information. After you have completed the worksheet for each Internet Service Provide that provides you with internet service, go to the Change System Attributes display and input the required information.

Recipients

From the pager company and e-mail worksheets, please enter each recipient and recipient ID for each recipient that is to be paged on the Add Recipient display (from the Work with recipients display). Each recipient can have multiple delivery types, such as pager, e-mail, message queue, telephone notification, spooled file, fax, and network message. Please refer to the Add Recipient portion of Chapter 6 of this manual for more information on setting up recipients.

Actions

Actions are procedures or responses that result from monitor processing. For example, specific Actions are to be taken when certain messages are encountered, including commands, replies, or forwarding to any recipient via a delivery type(s). Actions are defined on the Work with Actions display under the System monitors menu.

Monitor Configuration

Configuration of the monitors is very flexible and highly dependent on your particular needs. For an in-depth explanation of the various monitors, refer to Chapter 8 – System Monitors. For an effective set-up, you will need to know what you want to monitor for, when you want the monitor to be active, and what Action you want to be initiated in response to monitoring. The default schedule for all monitors is *ALLDAYS. You may define a different schedule for a monitor if you want anything other than the default.

There are several different monitors included in ICOM/400. Monitoring options include CPU capacity, message queues, QHST, job queues, output queues, job length, job existence, configuration status, arrival of network files, remote devices, spooled files, and a user-defined monitor to monitor for any Action you specify and/or one that is not accounted for by an existing monitor type. Monitors are defined on the Work with Monitors display under the System Monitors menu.

Testing

1. Test ICOM/400's message and delivery setup by sending a message
2. Type **GO ICM** at a command line to access ICOM/400's Main Menu.
3. Select option 1 to Send a message or type **SNDMSGICM** on a command line
4. Specify the message you want to send, the name of the recipient, and press Enter. Then specify the delivery type and hit Enter to send the test message.
5. For special sending options, see Chapter 3 of this manual

NOTE: If you experience any difficulties in sending or receiving messages, perform the following steps:

1. Recheck the modem settings.
2. Recheck the e-mail, fax, pager company or recipient information.
3. Look in the resource communication entries file. (See chapter 11 on displaying resource communication entries)
4. Sign on to ACS (Main Menu option 30) and check the Q & A database.
5. Check the support forum at www.icom400.com.
6. Contact your Technical Support Representative at Pinnacle (918) 587-1500.

Autostart

All ICOM/400 activity is routed through and controlled by an autostart job called ICOMDQM which runs in the ZICOM400 subsystem. This subsystem (and job) should be active at all times since paging, escalation, scheduling, queuing, and automatic history purging are performed by this job. The following command is processed during a new install of ICOM/400 to add an autostart job entry to Qbatch. This will cause the ZICOM400 subsystem to start after an IPL.

```
ADDAJE SBSD(QBATCH) Job(ICOMDQM) JOBD(ICOM400/ICOMDQM)
```

Each time a message is generated, a held message is released, or a held queue is released, or if a paging company is changed, this subsystem and job is automatically started by ICOM/400. However, if you are using the scheduling facilities provided in ICOM/400, it is advisable to implement this startup procedure.

To automatically start the ICOM/400 Monitors after an IPL:

- ❑ Put a *YES the for Autostart monitors parameter in your Change System Attributes screen (see Chapter 9, "System Controls")

Removing ICOM/400

To remove the ICOM/400 and/or the customer support products from your AS/400, enter the following commands:

```
MBAINST/MBAINST PRODUCT(ACS) ACTION(*REMOVE) RMVINST(*NO)    ↵ (Enter)
MBAINST/MBAINST PRODUCT(ICM) ACTION(*REMOVE) RMVINST(*YES)
```

NOTE: If you have Job/Manager or any other Pinnacle product on you AS/400, you may choose not to remove the Automated Customer Support product from your system. If this is the case, skip the first command string.

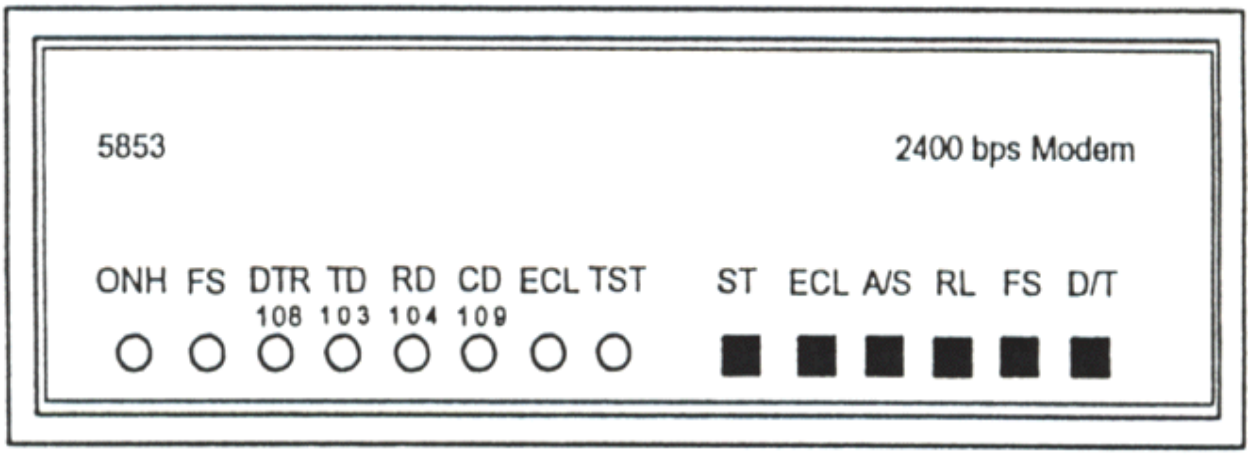
NOTE: No users can be using ICOM/400 while this command is executing.

Modem Configuration

ICOM/400 is capable of supporting a variety of asynchronous modems and is limited only by the requirements of the AS/400. However, some types of modems require a more complex configuration than others and therefore require more initial setup time.

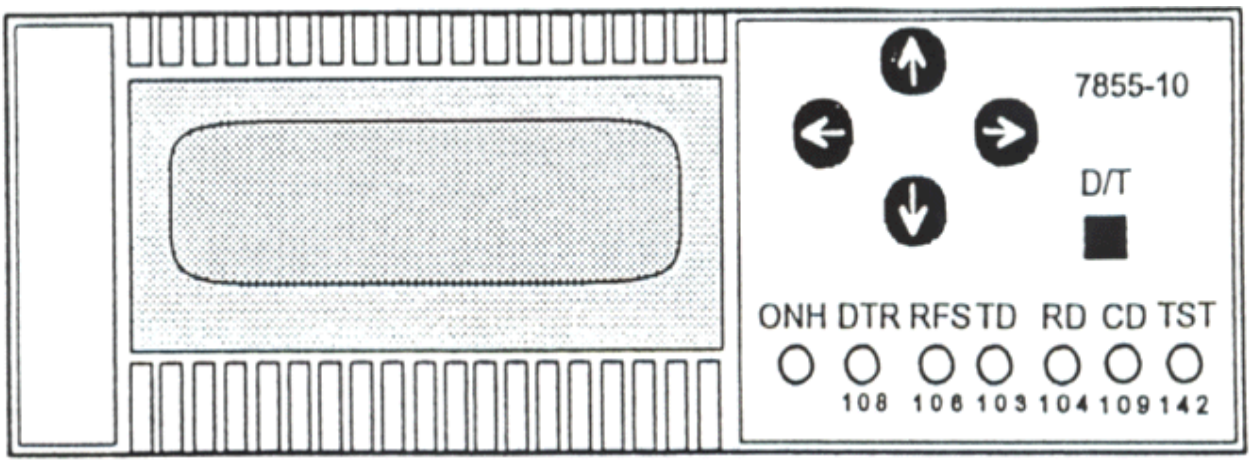
IBM 5853 Modem

To configure the IBM 5853 modem for use with ICOM/400, all of the front panel buttons must be in the released position. The "A/S" button switches between Asynchronous (OUT) and Synchronous (IN) operating modes and must be in Asynchronous (OUT) position. For synchronous operation (i.e. for IBM Electronic Customer Support or for Pinnacle's AS/Manager Customer Support) this button must be pushed in. The following is an illustration of this modem.



IBM 7855-10 Modem

To configure the IBM 7855-10 modem for use with ICOM/400, the modem must be configured in a asynchronous operating mode. The IBM 7855-10 can be configured either via AT commands issued from a display station or via the four directional buttons on the front of the modem.



Configuring the IBM 7855-10 Model for Synchronous Operation

Since utilizing the hardware buttons on the front panel does not require physical disconnection from the AS/400, this method will be presented here as follows:

Configuring the IBM 7855-10 Model for Synchronous Operation

ACTION	FRONT PANEL DISPLAY
1. Power off the modem.	(none)
2. Power the modem back on.	Wait for TST light to go out.
3. Press ← and → together, then release.	Exit Enter
4. Press →	View Only
5. Press ↓	First Setup
6. Press →	(may vary)

7.	Press ↓ until display shows	Synchronous
8.	Press ←	First Setup
9.	Press →	Synchronous
10.	Press ↓ until display shows	Get Profile
11.	Press →	Profile . . . NVM0
12.	Press ↓ until display shows	Profile . . . V.25BIS
13.	Press ←	First Setup
14.	Press ←	Exit Enter
15.	Press ←	Remain Unlocked
16.	Press ←	Save Profile 0
17.	Press ←	SYNC Int. 9600 a

Configuring the IBM 7855-10 Model for Asynchronous Operation

Since utilizing the hardware buttons on the front panel does not require physical disconnection from the AS/400, this method will be presented here as follows:

Configuring the IBM 7855-10 Model for Asynchronous Operation

	ACTION	FRONT PANEL DISPLAY
1.	Power off the modem.	(none)
2.	Power the modem back on.	Wait for TST light to go out.
3.	Press ← and → together, then release	Exit Enter
4.	Press →	View Only
5.	Press ↓	First Setup
6.	Press →	(may vary)
7.	Press ↓ until display shows	Asynchronous AT
8.	Press ←	First Setup
9.	Press →	Asynchronous AT
10.	Press ↓ until display shows	Get Profile
11.	Press →	Profile . . . NVM0
12.	Press ↓ until display shows	Profile . . . . . AT
13.	Press ←	First Setup
14.	Press ←	Exit Enter
15.	Press ←	Remain Unlocked
16.	Press ←	Save Profile 0
17.	Press ←	ASYN8N A 9600 a

Configuring an IBM 7852 Modem for Asynchronous Operation

There are two possible ways to use the 7852 modem. You can use it in asynchronous or synchronous mode.

To use it in asynchronous mode:

- Locate the dip switches on the right side of the modem.
- Flip the #12 dip switch to the down position.

To use it in synchronous mode (putting the modem in temporary synchronous mode):

- Make sure the #12 dip switch is in the up position.
- ICOM/400 software will create a line description for you automatically each time you send a message. This is helpful if you need to keep the 7852 modem in synchronous mode at all times (I.e., connecting to IBM.)

NOTE: Your system must be an AS/400 O/S release of V3R7M0 or higher to use the temporary asynchronous mode.

Configuring a Hayes/Compatible Modem for Asynchronous Operation

If your IBM ECS modem is not available or if you would like to configure a second resource on your AS/400 for use by ICOM/400 (see Chapter 9, "System Controls) then you may want to dedicate a modem to this purpose. Since the factory default settings for most asynchronous modems are not compatible with AS/400 requirements, external configuration is usually required. This may be accomplished by connecting the modem either to a display station or a PC running some type of terminal program. Due to the wide variety of asynchronous modems on the market, it is impossible to list a configuration string for each one.

Possible setup strings for common modems:

Hayes Smartmodem 1200/2400:
AT E0 Q0 V1 &C1 &D2 &Q0 &W0

Hayes Smartmodem 9600:
AT E0 Q0 V1 &C1 &D2 &Q0 S37=6 S46=0 &W0

Hayes Optima:
AT E0 Q0 V1 &C1 &D2 &S1 &Q0 &W0

100% Hayes compatible (all other asynchronous modems):
AT E0 Q0 V1 &C1 &D2 &S1 &Q0 &W0

NOTE: AT (attention) command must be in upper case. Other commands may be in upper or lower case (Space are optional between commands)

ICOM/400 Main Menu

```
ICM                          ICOM/400 Main Menu

Select one of the following:

     1. Send a message
     2. Work with history
     3. Work with activity
     4. Recipient information
     5. History information
     6. System monitors
     7. System controls

    20. Quick start Wizard

    30. Remote customer support



                                                                  Bottom
Selection or command
===>
```

Options

Option 1. Send a message (SNDMSGICM): Select this option to send messages using ICOM/400. You are taken to the Send Message using ICM command where you can enter the message and its associated parameters.

Option 2. Work with history (WRKHSTICM): Select this option to work with history that has been processed or is waiting to be processed. You are taken to the Work with History using ICM command where you can specify the parameters that you want to work with.

Option 3. Work with activity (WRKATVICM): Select this option to remove, display and acknowledge messages and other activity within ICOM/400. Use this option to view details of each activity.

Option 4. Recipient information (go ICMRCP): Select this option to Work with recipient information. When you press enter, you will go to the Recipient Information menu. Here you may choose from six different options to Work with recipients, groups, pager companies, schedules, escalation tables and pre-defined messages.

Option 5. History information (go ICMHIST): Select this option to Work with History information. When you press enter, you will go to the History Information menu. Here you may choose from eight different options.

For instance you can:

- Remove history
- Display the log
- Remove log entries
- Display Resource communication entries
- Print Resource communication entries

Option 6. System monitors (go ICMMON): Select this option to Work with System Monitors. When you press enter, you will go to the System Monitors menu. Here you may choose from eleven different options. For instance, you can display, name, schedule, adjust, start and end system monitors. You may also Work with Actions, Work with Monitor Subsystem, or Send a Program Message.

Option 7. System controls (go ICMSYSCTL): Select this option to Work with System Controls. When you press enter, you will go to the System Controls menu.

Here you may choose from the following four options:

- Change the system attributes
- Work with function authorities
- Reset ICOM/400
- Work with page queues

Option 20. Quick Start Wizard: Select this option to go to ICOM/400 Quick Start Wizard. From here, you can add or change entries that you originally specified.

Option 30. Remote customer support (go ASM): Select this option to perform tasks related to remote customer support.

For example you can:

- Order PTFs for any Pinnacle product.
- Send a message to technical support.
- Page a technical support representative.
- Ask questions or search for answers on the Pinnacle Q&A database.
- Configure communications for support.

Chapter 3 - Sending a Message Using ICOM/400

The Send Message using ICM (SNDMSGICM) command display is used to send a message to a single recipient, a group of recipients, multiple groups of recipients or just those recipients that are on-call. You can schedule the SNDMSGICM command through a job scheduler if you want the message to be sent at a particular time or as a result of a job running. A typical use of the SNDMSGICM command within a job scheduler would be to send a message indicating the successful or unsuccessful completion of a job or series of jobs.

To reach the Send Message using ICM command display you may either type ==> **SNDMSGICM** on a command line or from the ICOM/400 Main Menu, select Option 1 – **Send a Message**.

```
                    Send Message using ICOM/400 (SNDMSGICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Name . . . . . .   *SELECT       *ALL, *SELECT, *NONE...
             + for more values
Message  . . . . . .   *NONE _____________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________

File type to send  . . . . . .   *NONE         *NONE, *TEXTFILE, *SPLF
Send type  . . . . . .   *RCP          *RCP, *GRP
Schedule date  . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT
Schedule time  . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Time, *CURRENT
Place on page queue  . . . . . .   *YES          *YES, *NO
```

To send a message using ICOM/400, you must follow the steps below:

1. Specify the name of the person or group to whom you want the message to be sent. If you do not know the name, leave ***SELECT** in the **Name** field. Specifying ***ALL** will send the message to all defined recipients. (Recipients are defined on the Work with Recipients display). If you specify ***NONE**, the message will not be sent to a recipient.
2. Enter the message that you want to send. Messages of up to 999 character in length can be entered. ***NONE** specifies that you do not want to send a message. You may also enter a phone number in the **Message** field if you are using ***PHONE** as the delivery type.

   NOTE: When you want to send a message using e-mail, a default subject will automatically be applied to the message. If you wish to change the subject, enter a new subject within the first 32 characters of the message in the Message field, @@, and then the body of the message. An example would be: 'Subject: Meeting @@ Sales meeting at 2pm', where "Subject: Meeting" is the new subject and "Sales meeting at 2pm" is the message. Otherwise, a default subject of "ICOM/400 Notification" will be applied.

   NOTE: If you want to insert a new line into your message body, simply type **&NL**, and all text after &NL will be moved to the next line.

3. If you want to attach a file to the message, specify if you are want to send a spooled file (***SPLF**) or a text file (***TEXTFILE**). You will be prompted for more information, based on the file type that you choose to send.
4. Specify if you are sending the message to a recipient or group of recipients.
5. Specify a scheduled date and time to send the message. ***CURRENT** means that you want to send the message immediately.
6. If you are sending a pager message, specify if you want to place the message on a page queue.
7. Specify how you want to send this message. You can send it via e-mail (***EMAIL**), message queue (***MSGQ**), pager (***PAGER**), telephone (***PHONE**), fax machine (***FAX**), spooled file (***SPLF**), or network message (***NETMSG**). Specifying ***RCP** will send the message via the delivery methods defined for the specific recipient(s) you entered in the **Name** field. **NOTE:** Choosing specific delivery type(s) will override the delivery type pre-defined for the recipient, only if the delivery type you specify is defined for that recipient. If the delivery type is not defined for that recipient, you will receive an error message.
8. Specify if you want to escalate the message. ***RCP** specifies that you want to use the escalation table defined for the recipient you have chosen. For more information on escalation tables, see Chapter 6 – Work with Recipients.
9. Specify if you want to check for a reply when sending an e-mail or pager message. This is only available if you have two-way communications available.
10. Specify if you want to use recipient pre/post information for the recipient(s).
11. Specify if you want to want all recipients entered in the **Name** field to receive the message or only recipients that are on-call to receive the message.
12. Specify what action you want to take if the message must wrap around on the screen. **NOTE**: This applies only to fax and e-mail messages. If ***NOWRAP** is specified, the message text will be cut off if it is longer than 80 characters.
13. Enter the appropriate information on delivery types, if needed. These include e-mail addresses, phone numbers, message queues, output queues, pager numbers, and fax numbers. A delivery type is necessary if ***NONE** is specified in the **Recipient** parameter.

When you have finished entering all the pertinent information, press Enter to send the message.

> **NOTE:** Entering SNDMSGICM on a command line and pressing Enter without prompting, or leaving ***SELECT** in the Recipient parameter, will take you to the Select Recipients display. Enter a 1 beside the recipient you want to receive the message. Press enter to confirm the send of the message. The message is sent and you are returned to the previous display. The recipient defaults are used when sending the message. To send a message with your own specifications, either select Options 1 (Send a message) from the ICOM/400 Main Menu, or enter SNDMSGICM on a command line and press F4 to prompt the command.

To send a voice message using ICOM/400, you must follow the steps below:

1. From the PC where you are sending your voice message, you must have the ICOM/400 Voice software installed and running. For more information on installing this software, refer to Chapter 2. You can start the software by going to the Start menu, then Programs, then ICOM400 Voice.
2. Make sure that you have an IP entry set up for the recipient to which you are sending the voice message. For more information on IP entries, see "Chapter 6: Work with IP Entries."
3. Specify the name of the person or group to whom you want the voice message to be sent. If you do not know the name, leave ***SELECT** in the **Name** field. Specifying ***ALL** will send the message to all defined recipients. (Recipients are defined on the Work with Recipients display). If you specify ***NONE**, the message will not be sent to a recipient.
4. Enter the message that you want to send. Messages of up to 999 character in length can be entered. Specify if you are sending the message to a recipient or group of recipients.

5. Specify a scheduled date and time to send the message. ***CURRENT** means that you want to send the message immediately.
6. For delivery type, specify ***PHONE**, or ***RCP** if you select a recipient who already has ***PHONE** specified as a delivery type entry. If you do not have a recipient with a ***PHONE** delivery entry set up, then you must specify ***NONE** in the **Recipient** field and enter a phone number in the **Phone number** field.
7. Specify if you want to escalate the message. ***RCP** specifies that you want to use the escalation table defined for the recipient you have chosen. For more information on escalation tables, see Chapter 6 – Work with Recipients.
8. Specify if you want to want all recipients entered in the **Name** field to receive the message or only recipients that are on-call to receive the message.

When you have finished entering all the pertinent information, press Enter to send the message.

Using ICOM/400 to Send a Message: An Example

You were recently contacted by the manager of the building where your business resides. She stated that the power for the building would be out temporarily the following Monday at 10pm for needed maintenance procedures. Since this will affect your AS/400 operations, you must let your users know about the situation. You decide to send a page and e-mail to your users that will be on-call Monday morning of the day that the power is scheduled to go out. Since this is Friday, you want to schedule the messages for Monday morning. You take Option 1 (Send a message) from the ICOM/400 Main Menu to go to the SNDMSGICM command display. In the **Name** field, you enter *ALL. In the **Message** parameter, you enter the message you want to send: "ATTENTION: Building manager announced that power will be going out at 10pm on Monday. Please run all necessary backup and maintenance jobs before that time." You specify that you want the message sent on the date of the power outage and the time to be 8am (08:00:00). In **Delivery type**, you specify *EMAIL and *PAGER (assuming that all of your employees have these delivery types set-up. If they do not, you will receive an error.) In the **Selected recipients**, you enter ***ONCALL** because you want only those recipients who are on-call at the time the message is sent to receive it. Once you have made any other specifications that you deem necessary, you press Enter to send the message.

Chapter 4 - Work with History

History Information is an important aspect of ICOM/400 functioning. It is imperative to be able to determine what messages ICOM/400 has sent, what messages have been acknowledged, or what messages still need to be acknowledged. If you sent a message and your user has not received it, you are able to go into the history information and determine the cause of the delay.

To reach the Work with History display, choose Option 2 (Work with History) from the ICOM/400 Main Menu. You are taken to the Work with History command display, where you can restrict what history information you display.

```
                    Work with ICOM/400 History (WRKHSTICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Company  . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, generic*, *ALL
Recipient  . . . . . .   *ALL        Name, generic*, *ALL, *NONE
Recipient Group  . . . . . .   *ALL  Name, generic*, *ALL
From date  . . . . . .   *BEGIN      Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn
To date  . . . . . .   *END          Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn
Entry status . . . . . .   *ALL      *ALL, *SENT, *PEND, *ERROR...
Escalation status  . . . . . .   *ALL  *ALL, *ESCING, *ACKD...
Job name . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, generic*, *CURRENT...
User . . . . . .   *ALL              Name, generic*, *CURRENT...
Message text . . . . . .   *ALL
Delivery type  . . . . . .   *ALL    *ALL, *EMAIL, *FAX...
              + for more values
Sequence option  . . . . . .   *DATE  *DATE, *RCP, *GRP
Entries to be displayed first  .   *LAST  *FIRST, *LAST
Output . . . . . .   *               *, *PRINT
```

The Work with History (WRKHSTICM) command display allows you to specify various options that you like to perform on messages in ICOM/400's history file. Choosing to use all the defaults allows you to display all of ICOM/400's activity. For example, you may specify messages sent to a specific pager company or a specific pager recipient. You may specify a specific date range of messages to display or messages sent by a certain user. Output can be displayed or printed to a spooled file.

Some important parameters of the WRKHSTICM command display are defined below. If you need an in-depth definition of a parameter, refer to the online help for WRKHSTICM.

- **Company**: You can specify if you want to display messages sent using all pager companies (***ALL**) or those sent using a particular company.
- **Recipient**: Specify the name of the recipient to whom the messages were sent. You may display messages sent to all recipients (***ALL**) or to a specific recipient.
- **Recipient group:** Specify the name of the recipient group to which the messages were sent.
- **From date and To date:** You can specify a date range of history to display. You can specify either specific dates or a certain number of days. ***BEGIN** specifies the earliest activity date in the history file, and ***END** specifies the latest date in the history file.
- **Entry status:** You may specify the status of the entries that you would like to display. Examples of statuses include ***SENT**, ***PEND, *ERROR, *HELD, *SCHED,** and ***READY**.
- **Escalation status:** Specifies the escalation status of the messages that you want to include in the display or report. These include ***ESCING, *ACKD**, ***ESCD**, ***EXPD**, or ***NONE**.
- **Delivery type:** Specify the delivery type for the activity that you want to display or report. These include messages sent by e-mail (***EMAIL**), message queue (***MSGQ**), pager

(***PAGER**), phone (***PHONE**), fax (***FAX**), spooled file (***SPLF**), or network message (***NETMSG**).

When you have defined your specifications, press Enter to go to the Work with History display.

```
                              Work with History
                                                          3/15/03  17:21:41
 Position to Date . . . . .

 Type options, press Enter.
   3=Hold     4=Remove     5=Display     6=Release     7=Resend message
   8=Display escalation    9=Acknowledge

     Entry     Entry    Delivery            Escalation   Entry
Opt  Date      Time       Type    Recipient  Status       Status   Message
    3/10/03  10:54:11  *EMAIL     BELLSOUTH  None         Sent     testing 2 way
    3/11/03   9:25:17  *EMAIL     STEVEN     None         Sent     testing
    3/11/03   9:36:48  *EMAIL     *NONE      None         Sent     hello
    3/11/03  15:18:11  *EMAIL     BYEMAIL    None         Sent     test@@did you
    3/15/03  10:48:26  *EMAIL     *NONE      None         Sent     Sierra Pacifi
    3/15/03  10:57:39  *EMAIL     *NONE      None         Error    Sierra Pacifi
    3/15/03  10:58:38  *EMAIL     *NONE      None         Error    Sierra Pacifi
    3/15/03  11:04:57  *EMAIL     *NONE      None         Error    Sierra Pacifi
    3/15/03  11:12:14  *EMAIL     *NONE      None         Error    Sierra Pacifi
    3/15/03  11:13:29  *EMAIL     *NONE      None         Sent     Sierra Pacifi
```

The Work with History display shows all messages that you requested as a result of processing the Work with History using ICM (WRKHSTICM) command. The display can contain all messages, regardless of status or can be conditioned to only include selected messages, a date range of messages and so on. The time and date of the entry, along with its current status and contents, are shown. In addition, delivery type, recipients, and escalation status are displayed.

From this display, you have many options. If a message is in **Ready** or **Pending** status, Option **3** allows you to **Hold** a message. Type **4** by the messages that you want to remove. You will be asked to confirm the removal of your selected messages. Option **5** allows you to display the information about messages you select. If a message is **Held**, you can release it by typing a **6** by it. If a message is in **Sent** status, typing a **7** beside the message will resend it. **NOTE:** If you wish to change anything about the message before re-sending, you may press F4 (Prompt) after you type **7** on the command line. This will prompt the **SNDMSGICM** command. If the message has been escalated, you can display the escalation pattern by typing an **8** beside the message. You can acknowledge a message by typing a **9** beside the message. The message is either acknowledged or a message is displayed indicating that the message is not eligible for acknowledgement.

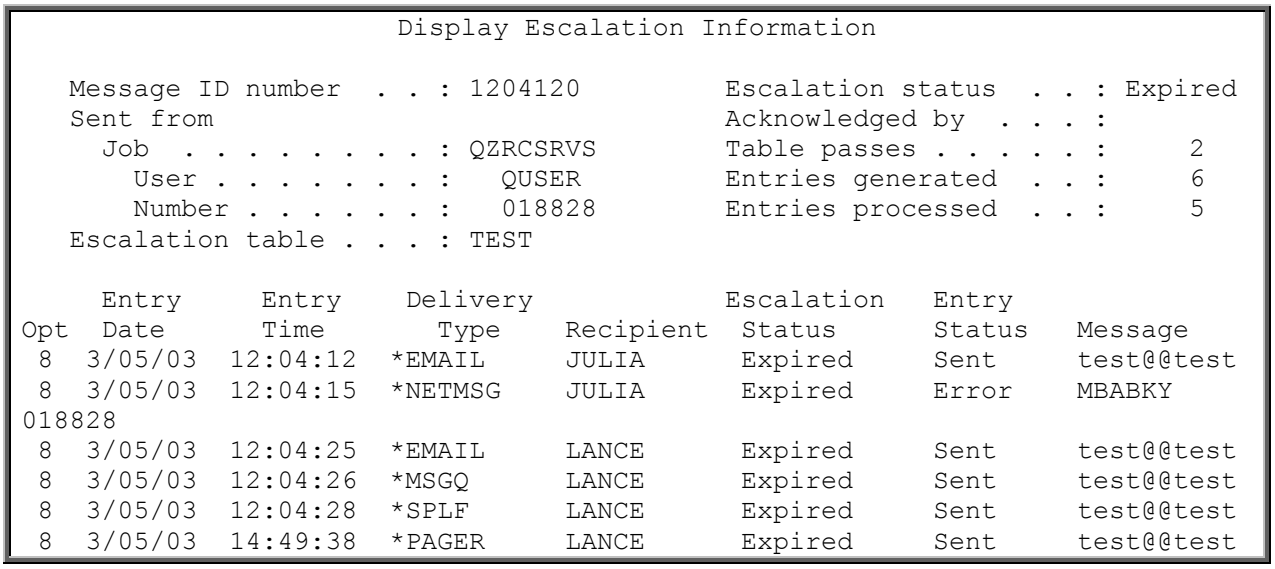
Option 5 allows you to display specific information about a message. You can view on what date a message was entered and sent, as well as the time it was entered and sent. You can view the recipient and/or recipient group of the message, the delivery type, the entry status, error message ID and where the message was sent from (i.e., the job that sent the message, user and number of the job). You can also view the escalation status, who acknowledged the message if it has an escalation status of **Ackd,** the text of the message, and if applicable, the file sent with the message.

```
                          Display Information

Date entered / sent . . . . . :  3/15/03      3/15/03
Time entered / sent . . . . . : 10:48:26     10:48:26
Recipient / Recipient group . : *NONE         *NONE
Delivery type . . . . . . . . : *EMAIL
Delivery information  . . . . : lance@pbsnow.com
Entry status  . . . . . . . . : Sent
Error message ID  . . . . . . : ICM3046
Sent from
  Job . . . . . . . . . . . . : QPADEV0017
    User  . . . . . . . . . . :   LANCE
    Number  . . . . . . . . . :   021241
Escalation status / table . . : None          *NONE
Acknowledged by . . . . . . . :
Reply . . . . . . . . . . . . : *NONE
Message . . . . . . . . . . . : Sierra Pacific Power Company - EFT file
```

Some important fields on the Display Information display include the following:

- **Entry status:** The status of the message history entry. Valid statuses include:
  - ***Sent***: The message was successfully sent.
  - ***Pending*:** The message is queued to be sent. A message that is pending is normally waiting for a pager queue depth or time requirement to be completed.
  - ***Error*:** There was an error when sending the message.
  - ***Held*:** The message has been held.
  - ***Scheduled*:** The message has been scheduled for transmission at a later time.
  - ***Ready*:** The message is ready for transmission and is awaiting communication resources to become available.
- **Error message ID:** The error message identifier. This will be a completion message ID if the message was successfully sent.
- **Escalation status:** The escalation status of the message. Valid statuses include:
  - ***Escalating****:* The message has been sent, but now acknowledged and the escalation time specified in the **Delay** prompt in the escalation table has not been exceeded
  - ***Ackd****:* The message has been acknowledged and the escalation process has ended.
  - ***Escalated****:* The message has been escalated. It was sent as part of an escalation table but was not acknowledged before the time specified in the **Delay** prompt expired. The escalation process is still active.
  - ***Expired****:* The message has expired. This is similar to *Escalated*, but here the escalation process is no longer active.
  - ***None****:* There is no escalation associated with this message.
- **File sent:** If there was a file attached to the message, the name and information about the file are displayed. The file can be a spooled file or a text file. If the file was a text file, the text file name, library and member associated with the file are displayed. If the file was a spooled file, the spooled file name, job, user, job number and spooled file number associated with the file are displayed.

Option 8 from the Work with History display takes you to the Display Escalation Information display. Here, you can see the escalation detail associated with a particular message.



```
                      Display Escalation Information

   Message ID number  . . : 1204120         Escalation status  . . : Expired
   Sent from                                Acknowledged by  . . . :
     Job  . . . . . . . . : QZRCSRVS        Table passes . . . . . :     2
       User . . . . . . . :   QUSER         Entries generated  . . :     6
       Number . . . . . . :   018828        Entries processed  . . :     5
   Escalation table . . . : TEST

     Entry     Entry    Delivery            Escalation   Entry
Opt  Date      Time       Type    Recipient  Status      Status   Message
 8  3/05/03  12:04:12  *EMAIL     JULIA      Expired     Sent     test@@test
 8  3/05/03  12:04:15  *NETMSG    JULIA      Expired     Error    MBABKY
018828
 8  3/05/03  12:04:25  *EMAIL     LANCE      Expired     Sent     test@@test
 8  3/05/03  12:04:26  *MSGQ      LANCE      Expired     Sent     test@@test
 8  3/05/03  12:04:28  *SPLF      LANCE      Expired     Sent     test@@test
 8  3/05/03  14:49:38  *PAGER     LANCE      Expired     Sent     test@@test
```

Some important fields on the Display Escalation Information display include:

- **Page ID number:** The internal number generated by ICOM/400 to track this message
- **Escalation table:** The name of the escalation table that was used to escalate this message
- **Table passes:** The number of passes through the specified escalation stable
- **Entries generated:** The number of entries generated so far within this escalation process
- **Entries processed:** The total number of entries that have been processed so far

Chapter 5 - Work with Activity

Monitor activity is another important feature of ICOM/400. It allows you to work with activity that has occurred as a result of monitor-initiated messages, as well as those generated by users. You can keep track of activity generated by any monitor that you specify.

There are several different types of monitors for use with ICOM/400. A list of those monitors is displayed below:

Configuration status (*CFGSTS): This monitor allows you to monitor the status of your lines, devices and controllers.
CPU (*CPU): This monitor allows you to monitor for jobs that exceed CPU processing capacity, as well as monitors total system CPU capacity.
Job (*JOB): This monitor allows you to monitor the length and existence of individual jobs.
Job queue (*JOBQ): This monitor allows you to monitor the number of jobs in your job queue, as well lets you know if a job is not active.
Message queue (*MSGQ): This monitor allows you to monitor a specified message queue.
Network file (*NETF): This monitor allows you to monitor for the presence of network files.
Object size (*OBJSIZ): This monitor allows you to monitor the size of an object.
Output queue (*OUTQ): This monitor allows you to monitor the number of spooled files.
QHST (*QHST): This monitor allows you to monitor the system history log to catch messages that are not available in a message queue.
Remote device (*RMTDEV): This monitor allows you to monitor for the presence of remote devices to see if you have a network failure.
Spooled file (*SPLF): This monitor allows you to monitor for specific spooled files within an output queue.
Subsystem (*SBS): This monitor allows you to monitor the number of jobs running in a subsystem
User-defined (*USRDFN): This monitor allows you to monitor operations that have been defined by users.

These are the monitors listed under **Monitor type**. Other entries may include one of following:

User message (*USRMSG): The activity was initiated by the SNDMSGICM command.
Send spooled file (*SNDSPLF): The activity was initiated by the SNDSPLFICM command.

To reach the Work with Activity display, select Option 3 (Work with activity) from the ICOM/400 Main Menu. You are taken to the Work with Activity (WRKATVICM) command display, where you can restrict the activity that you display or report.

```
                        Work with Activity (WRKATVICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Monitor  . . . . . .  . .   *ALL          Name, *ALL
              + for more values
Monitor type . . . . . .  .   *ALL          *ALL, *CFGSTS, *CPU...
              + for more values
Time period for output:
  Start time and date:
  Beginning time . . . . . .   *AVAIL        Time, *AVAIL
  Beginning date . . . . . .   *BEGIN        Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn
  End time and date:
  Ending time  . . . . . .  .   *AVAIL        Time, *AVAIL
  Ending date  . . . . . .  .   *END          Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn
Sequence option  . . . . . .   *DATE         *DATE, *MONTYP
Entries to be displayed first  .   *LAST         *FIRST, *LAST
Output . . . . . .  . . . . .   *            *, *PRINT
```

The Work with Activity command display allows you to specify the activity with which you want to work. For example, you can specify activity for certain monitors, or all monitors. You can work with all monitor types, or only one type, such as a message queue monitor or configuration status monitor. You can set date limits on the activity you want to display or report, or you can work with all available activity on the system.

Some important parameters of the WRKATVICM command are defined below. If you require more information, refer to the online help for WRKATVICM.

- **Monitor:** The name of the monitor that you want to display or report. You can work with activity for all monitors (***ALL**) or enter a specific monitor.
- **Monitor type:** The type of monitor whose activity you want to display or report. You can work with all types of monitor activity or select a specific monitor type.
- **Time period for output:** The period of time for which the activities are select for display or report. You may select a beginning time and date, as well as an ending time and date.
- **Sequence option:** You may specify the sequence in which you want to display or report ICOM/400 activity. ***DATE** displays or reports activity in date sequence. ***MONTYP** displays or reports activity in monitor-type sequence.
- **Entries to be displayed first:** Specify the order in which you want activity to be displayed. ***LAST** shows last activity entry first. ***FIRST** shows first activity entry first.

Once you are satisfied with your specifications, press Enter display or print your activity. If you choose to display your activity, you will be taken to the Work with Activity display.

```
                              Work with Activity
Position to  . . . . . .

 Type options, press Enter.
   4=Remove    5=Display    8=Detail    9=Acknowledge

Opt Type         Date     Time      Activity information
   *USRMSG     3/11/03  9:36:47  Sent by STEVEN
   *USRMSG     3/11/03 15:18:10  Sent by QUSER
   *USRMSG     3/15/03 10:48:24  Sent by LANCE
   *USRMSG     3/15/03 10:57:38  Sent by LANCE
   *USRMSG     3/15/03 10:58:37  Sent by LANCE
   *USRMSG     3/15/03 11:04:56  Sent by LANCE
   *SNDSPLF    3/15/03 14:46:59  Spooled file QPJOBLOG sent by STEVEN
   *SNDSPLF    3/15/03 15:13:39  Spooled file QSYSPRT sent by JULIA
```

The Work with Activity display shows all activity that you specified in the WRKATVICM command. This display can contain all activity, regardless of status or can be conditioned to only include selected activity, a date range of activity, and so on. The time and date of the message, its current status and contents are shown and any entry that you want more information about can be displayed using Option 5 (**Display**) or Option 8 (**Detail**).

From this display, you can remove activity (**4=Remove**), display activity (**5=Display**), view more detailed information about activity (**8=Detail**) or acknowledge a message if it has been escalated (**9=Acknowledge**).

Some important fields include:

- **Type:** The type of monitor that generated the activity. ***USRMSG** indicates that the activity was initiated by the use of the SNDMSGICM command. ***SNDSPLF** indicates that the activity was initiated by the use of the SNDSPLFICM command.
- **Activity information:** Information about the activity, such as originator of a user-defined message, or the message text

Selecting Option 5 allows you to display the detail of a specific activity message.

```
                              Display Activity

 Monitor  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . : *NONE
 Monitor type . . . . . . . . . . . . . . : *SNDSPLF
 Date . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . :  3/10/03
 Time . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . : 13:46:23
 Activity information . . . . . . . . . . : Spooled file QPJOBLOG sent by
BRIAN

 Acknowledged recipient . . . . . . . . . : *NONE
 Acknowledged by user . . . . . . . . . . : *NONE
 Acknowledge date . . . . . . . . . . . . : *NONE
 Acknowledge time . . . . . . . . . . . . :  0:00:00
```

Some important fields include:

- **Type**: The type of monitor that generated the activity.
- **Acknowledged recipient**: If the message was escalated, the recipient of the acknowledgement. ***NONE** specifies that the activity has not been acknowledged or does not need acknowledgement.
- **Acknowledged by user**: The ID of the person who acknowledged the activity message. ***NONE** specifies that the message was not acknowledged by a recipient or was not set to escalate.
- **Acknowledged date and time**: The time and date that the message was acknowledged. **0:00:00** specifies that the message has not been acknowledged or does not need acknowledgement.

Option 8 allows you to display the detail of the activity message.

```
3/15/03                    Display Activity Detail
17:34:35

--------------------------------  3/10/03 ----------------------------------
Sending spooled file QPJOBLOG number 0001 for job 018584/BRIAN/DOICM20.
ATTACH sent to briany@webzone.net.
1 type *EMAIL sent, 0 spooled file pages not sent.
```

The Display Activity Detail display lists text associated with the detail of an activity message. For any message that you want to see additional information, place cursor on that line and press Help or F1 to go to the Additional Activity Detail display where you can review the entire message, plus any additional information that is available.

Chapter 6 - Recipient Information

Recipient information is an integral part of ICOM/400. In order to be able to send any kind of message, you must have a person or group to which it will be sent. This chapter includes information on setting up and sending messages to recipients and recipient groups, as well as defining schedules and configuring pager companies. You will also learn how to set-up and use escalation tables and create pre-defined messages.

```
ICMRCP                        Recipient Information

Select one of the following:

     1. Work with recipients
     2. Work with recipient groups
     3. Work with schedules
     4. Work with pager companies
     5. Work with escalation tables
     6. Work with pre-defined messages

     9. Work with IP entries
```

From the ICOM/400 Main Menu, select Option 4 (Recipient Information) and press Enter. You are taken to the Recipient Information menu, where you have several choices.

Option 1=Work with Recipients

Entering Option 1 on a command line takes you to the Work with Recipients display.

```
                            Work with Recipients

Position to . . . . . .               Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add  2=Change  3=Copy  4=Remove  5=Display  7=Send message
  9=Edit authority

Opt Recipient   Escalation  Text

    BELLMAN     *NONE       *NONE
    BELLMAN2    *NONE       *NONE
    BELLSOUTH   *NONE       *NONE
    BOMB        *NONE       *NONE
    BYEMAIL     *NONE       briany@webzone.net
    BYMSGQ      *NONE       *NONE
    BYMSGQ2     *NONE       *NONE
    CANDICE     *NONE       *NONE
    DEONNA      *NONE       *NONE
    DEONNA2     *NONE       *NONE
```

The Work with Recipients display shows all recipients that have been defined to ICOM/400. Recipients are individuals or locations that are configured to receive messages from ICOM/400.

From this display, you have many options. You can add (**Option 1**) recipients, change (**Option 2**) recipients that you have already defined, copy (**Option 3**) recipients, remove (**Option 4**) recipients

and display (**Option 5**) recipients. You can also send a message to a selected recipient (**Option 7**) or edit the authority of a particular recipient (**Option 9**).

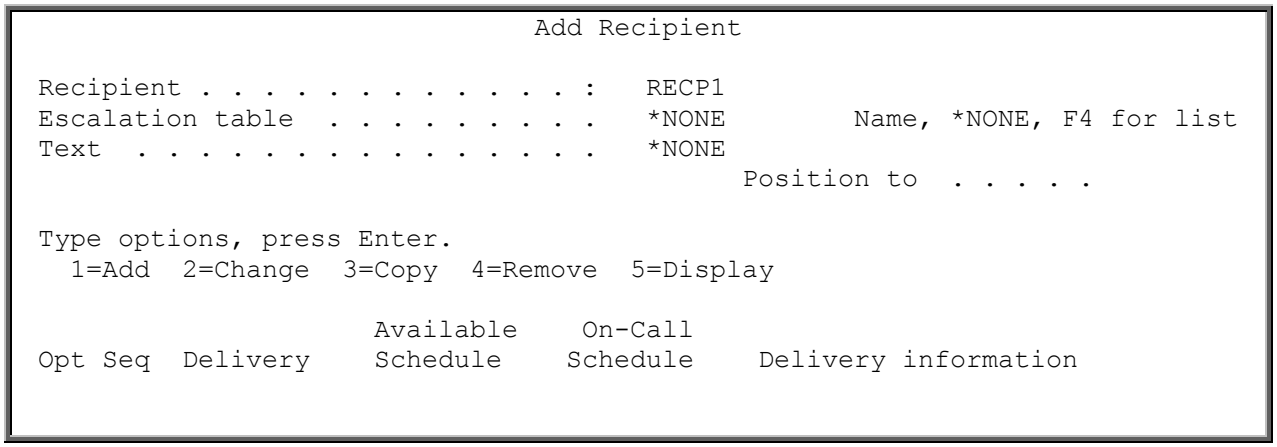
The display lists the name of the recipient, the escalation table associated with the recipient, and a text description of the recipient. If the recipient is not a member of an escalation table, the **Escalation** field will have a value of ***NONE**.

You may also view the delivery types of each recipient by pressing F6. Each delivery type is listed, as well as '**Y**' to indicate that the recipient has this delivery type set-up, or '**N**' to indicate that this delivery type is not set-up for the recipient. The possible delivery types include:

- ***PAGER**
- ***PHONE**
- ***EMAIL**
- ***MSGQ**
- ***FAX**
- ***SPLF**
- ***NETMSG**

Adding a Recipient

To add a recipient, enter a 1 on the first line of the **Opt** column, along with the name of the recipient you want to add. Press Enter to go to the Add Recipient display.



The Add Recipient display is used to add a recipient identifier and related information about that recipient. Recipients are people or locations to whom you have assigned delivery types and numbers so that they can receive messages.

To add a recipient, follow the steps below:

1. If you want the recipient to be associated with an escalation table, enter the name of the table in the **Escalation table** field. ***NONE** specifies that there is no escalation table associated with the recipient. Press F4 to select from a list of existing escalation tables. From the **Select Table** display, you may work with escalation tables by pressing F9. **NOTE**: In order for your new recipient to be included on the escalation table, you must add him/her to the table. (See **Escalation Tables** for instructions on adding a recipient to an escalation table).
2. If necessary, enter a description of the recipient in the **Text** field.
3. You need to add delivery type(s) for your recipient. Enter a 1 on the first line of the **Opt** column, a sequence number for the delivery type (from 1 to 99) and the delivery type you want to add. If you do not specify a delivery type, ICOM/400 automatically defaults to ***PAGER**.

Add Recipient Delivery Entry

The Add Recipient Delivery Entry is used to add a delivery entry for a recipient. There are several different delivery types. These include: ***PAGER**, ***PHONE**, ***EMAIL**, ***MSGQ**, ***FAX**, ***SPLF,** and ***NETMSG.**

There are several important fields that are common to all delivery entries. These include:

- **Sequence:** If you have not done so, you must assign a sequence number to the delivery entry. No two sequence entry numbers can be the same.
- **Available schedule:** Specify the schedule during which you want the recipient to be available for the delivery entry. ***ALLDAYS** means that the recipient is always available. For more information, see **Schedules**.
- **On-call schedule:** Specify the schedule during which the recipient will be on-call for the delivery entry. The messages sent to the on-call recipient would go to recipient on-call during the specified time period. Recipients can be permanently assigned an on-call status (***ALLDAYS**) or can be permanently excluded from an on-call status (***NONE**).
- **Pre-message information:** Specify the information that you want to precede a message for the delivery entry. This information can be text, variables, or a combination of the two.
- **Post-message information**: Specify the information that you want to follow a message for the delivery entry. This information can be text, variables, or a combination of the two.
  The following variables can be used for pre- or post- information:
  - **&QJOB –** Qualified job that originated the page in the format JOBNBR/USER/JOB
  - **&JOB**
  - **&USER**
  - **&JOBNBR**
  - **&SYSID**
  - **&DATE**
  - **&TIME**
  - **&MSGNBR**

PAGER (*PAGER)

The ***PAGER** delivery method sends a message to an alpha or numeric pager. You must specify a pager ID for the recipient, as well as the pager company that will be used to send the message and the type of the pager. If your pager company is BellSouth and the pager itself supports two-way communication, specify to allow two-way communication.

```
                        Add Recipient Delivery Entry

Delivery type . . . . . :   *PAGER

Type choices, press Enter.

Sequence  . . . . . .                  Number, 001-999
Available schedule  . . . . . .   *ALLDAYS     Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
On-call schedule  . . . . . .   *NONE        Name, *NONE, *ALLDAYS, F4
Pager ID  . . . . . .
Pager company . . . . . .                  Name, F4 for list
Pager type  . . . . . .   A             A=Alpha, D=Digital
Allow 2-way communication . . . . .   *NO          *NO, *YES
Pre-message information . . . . . .

Post-message information  . . . . .
```

To add a pager delivery entry, follow the steps below:

1. Specify a pager ID for the recipient. This specifies the destination pager number. **NOTE**: This could be a pager phone number or a PIN number.
2. Enter the pager company that is associated with the pager ID. For a list of pager companies, place your cursor on the **Pager company** field and press F4. You may also press F9 to Work with Pager Companies.
3. Enter the type of pager. **A** specifies that the pager is an alpha pager, capable of both alpha and numeric characters. **D** specifies that the pager is a digital pager, capable of only numeric characters.
4. If your pager company supports two-way paging, specify if you want to allow two-way communication for this recipient. **NOTE**: The recipient's pager equipment must be able to receive and send messages in order to be able to support two-way communication.

   NOTE: If you want to dial a numeric pager directly, rather than going through the pager company, use the ***PHONE** delivery method (see below for more information.)

EMAIL (*EMAIL)

The ***EMAIL** delivery method sends a message to an e-mail address. You must specify the e-mail address for the recipient, as well as if you want to allow two-way communication for this recipient.

```
                        Add Recipient Delivery Entry

Delivery type . . . . . :   *EMAIL

Type choices, press Enter.

Sequence  . . . . . .                 Number, 001-999
Available schedule  . . . . . .   *ALLDAYS     Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
On-call schedule  . . . . . .   *NONE        Name, *NONE, *ALLDAYS, F4
E-mail address  . . . . . .

Allow 2-way communication . . . . .   *NO          *NO, *YES
Pre-message information . . . . . .

Post-message information  . . . . .
```

To add an e-mail delivery entry, follow the steps below:

1. Specify the e-mail address of the recipient. The address is specified in the yourname@domain.com format.
2. Specify if you want to allow two-way communication when sending e-mail. This allows the recipient to send replies to e-mail that they have received.

   NOTE: When you are sending a reply to an e-mail from an e-mail package using two-way communication, you must place your reply at the very beginning of the body of the e-mail, and you must also place << and >> around your reply. For instance, if you want to reply to an inquiry message with a "C," you must place <<C>> at the beginning of the message. Replies form a pager must also contain the << and >>.

   All other information for this delivery method is optional.

PHONE (*PHONE)

The *__PHONE__ delivery method sends telephone notifications. It will ring the phone number that you specify for the recipient. Once you pick up, it will issue a set of tones so that you will know that it is your AS/400 that is messaging you, or if you have the voice capability, it will speak the message.

```
                      Add Recipient Delivery Entry

Delivery type . . . . . :   *PHONE

Type choices, press Enter.

Sequence  . . . . . .                 Number, 001-999
Available schedule  . . . . . .   *ALLDAYS     Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
On-call schedule  . . . . . .     *NONE        Name, *NONE, *ALLDAYS, F4
Phone number  . . . . . .
IP entry for voice messaging  . . .   *ICMDFT      Name, *ICMDFT, *ANY, F4
Security code . . . . . .         *NONE
Allow 2-way communication . . . . .   *NO          *NO, *YES
Pre-message information . . . . . .

Post-message information  . . . . .
```

To add a phone delivery entry with tones:

1. Enter the phone number that you want to dial.

   All other information for this method is optional.

   NOTE: Within the **Pre-message information** field, a special value of ***NOTONE** can also be specified to disable the tones that are associated with a *PHONE delivery type (i.e. When ringing a telephone and receiving tones from the modem). This will make it possible to use the ***PHONE** type to send a pager message to a numeric pager
   and bypass the pager company setup.

   NOTE: When sending a page to a numeric pager, you may wish to use the ***PHONE** delivery entry to send your message. It will ring your pager directly, rather than dialing the pager company to send your message. This is also helpful when your pager company does not support TAP.

   To set up this delivery entry to send a numeric message (i.e., a phone number) to a numeric pager, follow the steps below:

   1. Specify the number of the numeric pager in the **Phone number** field.
   2. Place a few commas in the **Pre-message information** field to pause. This is usually necessary when sending a message to a numeric pager.
   3. You can also enter a number to send to the pager in the **Pre-message information** field. This number will be sent every time you page this recipient.
   4. In the **Post-message information** field, specify ***NOTONE** to turn off the tones that would normally be sent when ringing a telephone. If you do not specify ***NOTONE**, your pager will receive a series of 1s and 3s.
   5. If necessary, you may also wish to put **#** in the **Post-message information** field to hang up the call.

   This delivery entry can be used to send a message using the SNDMSGICM command. Enter a phone number or other numeric message in the **Message** parameter and specify ***PHONE** in the **Delivery type** parameter. ICOM/400 will automatically dial the pager number that is assigned to the recipient you specify and send the numeric message in the **Message** parameter.

   You can also use this delivery entry with an Action. To do this, you must set up a pre-defined message with the numeric information that you want to send. (See Pre-defined Messages for more

information on creating a pre-defined message). Then, set up an Action with the pre-defined message and ***PHONE** as the delivery type. You may associate this Action with a monitor. When the condition for which the monitor is monitoring is met, the Action will be initiated. The Action will dial the pager number for the recipient you have specified and will send the information specified for the pre-defined message.

The ***PHONE** delivery method is used to send voice messages.

To add a phone delivery entry with voice:

1. In order to send a voice message, you must specify an IP entry in the **IP entry for voice messaging** field. An IP entry is the IP address of a PC through which the voice message is sent. The **Allow 2-way communication** field must be set to ***YES** in order to respond to the voice message by pressing the appropriate number.
2. You may also specify a security code for voice messaging. A security code will prevent unauthorized persons from hearing a voice message without first entering the specified security code.

MESSAGE QUEUE (*MSGQ)

The ***MSGQ** delivery method sends a message to a message queue. You must specify a message queue and library for the recipient.

```
                        Add Recipient Delivery Entry

Delivery type . . . . . :   *MSGQ

Type choices, press Enter.

Sequence  . . . . . .                 Number, 001-999
Available schedule  . . . . . .   *ALLDAYS     Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
On-call schedule  . . . . . .     *NONE        Name, *NONE, *ALLDAYS, F4
Message queue. . . . . .                      Name
Library . . . . . .                 *LIBL      Name, *LIBL
Pre-message information . . . . . .

Post-message information  . . . . .
```

To add a message queue delivery entry, follow the steps below:

1. Enter the message queue to which you want to send the recipient's messages.
2. Enter the library that contains the message queue for the recipient. ***LIBL** specifies that the message queue library is a member of your library list.

   All other information for this delivery entry is optional.

FAX (*FAX)

The ***FAX** delivery method sends a message to a fax machine. This is usually used when sending an attachment, such as a spooled file or a text file.

```
                        Add Recipient Delivery Entry

Delivery type . . . . . :   *FAX
```

```
Type choices, press Enter.

Sequence  . . . . . .                  Number, 001-999
Available schedule  . . . . . .  *ALLDAYS     Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
On-call schedule  . . . . . .  *NONE        Name, *NONE, *ALLDAYS, F4
Fax phone number. . . . . .
Pre-message information . . . . .

Post-message information  . . . . .
```

To add a fax delivery entry, follow the steps below:

1. Enter the fax phone number to which you want to send the fax message.

   All other information is optional.

SPOOLED FILE (*SPLF)

The ***SPLF** delivery method sends a message as a spooled file to an output queue.

```
                    Add Recipient Delivery Entry

Delivery type . . . . . :   *SPLF

Type choices, press Enter.

Sequence  . . . . . .                  Number, 001-999
Available schedule  . . . . . .  *ALLDAYS     Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
On-call schedule  . . . . . .  *NONE        Name, *NONE, *ALLDAYS, F4
Output queue  . . . . . .                  Name, *USER
  Library . . . . . .                      Name, *LIBL
Copies  . . . . . .  *ICMDFT      1-99, *ICMDFT
Form type . . . . . .  *ICMDFT      Name, *ICMDFT
User ID:
  User ID . . . . . .  *NONE        Name, *NONE
  Address . . . . . .  *LCL         Name, *LCL
Hold spooled file . . . . . .  *ICMDFT      *YES, *NO, *ICMDFT
Save spooled file . . . . . .  *ICMDFT      *YES, *NO, *ICMDFT
Pre-message information . . . . .

Post-message information  . . . . .
```

To add a spooled file delivery entry, follow the steps below:

1. Specify the output queue and library that contains the spooled output that you want to monitor. ***USER** indicates that the spooled file is sent to the user specified in the **User ID** field at the address specified. This is the only time ***USER** is valid. **NOTE**: Specifying ***USER** indicates that you want to send a message to a user on a remote system. You must specify the user id and remote address of the system on which the user resides. ***LIBL** specifies that the library is a member of your library list.
2. Specify the number of copies that you want to produce for the recipient. ***ICMDFT** refers to the value specified in the Change System Attributes display.
3. Specify the form type to use for reports that you produce for the recipient. ***ICMDFT** refers to the value specified in the Change System Attributes display

4. Specify the user ID for the recipient. This is the user ID of the recipient who is to receive the spooled files. ***NONE** specifies that the spooled file is created locally.
5. Specify the address of the user ID in the **Address** field.
6. Specify if you want to hold the spooled file when produced by ICOM/400. ***ICMDFT** refers to the value specified in the Change System Attributes display.
7. Specify if you want to save the spooled file when produced by ICOM/400. ***ICMDFT** refers to the value specified in the Change System Attributes display.

   All other information is optional.

NETWORK MESSAGE (*NETMSG)

The ***NETMSG** delivery method sends a message to a message queue on a remote system.

```
                        Add Recipient Delivery Entry

Delivery type . . . . . . . . . . :   *NETMSG

Type choices, press Enter.

Sequence  . . . . . . . . . . . . .                Number, 001-999
Available schedule  . . . . . . . .   *ALLDAYS     Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
On-call schedule  . . . . . . . . .   *NONE        Name, *NONE, *ALLDAYS, F4
Message queue . . . . . . . . . . .                Name
  Library . . . . . . . . . . . . .     *LIBL      Name, *LIBL
Remote location name  . . . . . . .
Allow reply . . . . . . . . . . . .   *NO          *NO, *YES
Pre-message information . . . . . .   &SYSID &QJOB &DATE &TIME

Post-message information  . . . . .
```

To add a network message delivery entry, follow the steps below:

1. Specify the message queue and library on the remote system to which you want the messages sent. ***LIBL** indicates that the library is a member of you library list.
2. Specify the remote location name of the system to which you are sending the message queue messages. You may either specify the system name or the network identifier and location name. This last value is specified in the nnnnnnnn.cccccccc format, where nnnnnnnn is the network identifier and cccccccc is the location name.
3. Specify if you want to allow replies to a message sent to this message queue.

   All other information is optional.

This delivery type allows you to communicate with a remote system on your network. It is important that you obtain the correct remote location name of the system to which you are sending a network message. ICOM/400 must be installed on the remote system in order to send a message.

Changing a Recipient

To change a recipient, enter a **2** beside the recipient you want to change on the Work with Recipients display. You are taken to the Change Recipient display. Refer to **Adding a Recipient** for more information on the Change Recipient display fields.

Copying a Recipient

To copy a recipient, enter a **3** beside the recipient you want to copy on the Work with Recipients display. You are taken to the Copy Recipient display. Enter a name for your new recipient in the **New Name** field and press Enter. Your new recipient is added to the list of existing recipients.

Removing a Recipient

To remove a recipient, enter a **4** beside the recipient(s) you want to remove. You are taken to the Confirm Remove of Recipient display. Pressing Enter removes the recipient(s). To change your selections, press F12 to return to the Work with Recipients display.

Displaying a Recipient

To display a recipient, enter a **5** beside the recipient you want to display on the Work with Recipients display. You are taken to the Display Recipient display. Refer to **Adding a Recipient** for more information on the Display Recipient display fields.

Sending a Message to a Recipient

To send a message to a recipient from the Work with Recipients display, enter a **7** beside the recipient to which you want to send the message. You are taken to the **Send Message using ICOM/400** (**SNDMSGICM**) display. The name of the selected recipient is displayed in the **Name** field. Refer to **Chapter 3** for more information on sending a message.

Edit Recipient Authority

To edit the authority of a recipient, enter a **9** beside the recipient whose authority you want to change. You are taken to the Edit Recipient Authority display.

```
                          Edit Recipient Authority

Recipient  . . . . . . . . . . :  JULIA
Text . . . . . . . . . . . . . :  *NONE


Type changes to current authorities, press Enter.

            Recipient   Send     List     Display
User        Authority   Message  History  History  Escalate
*PUBLIC     USER DEF       X        X                   X
```

The Edit Recipient Authority display shows a list of the current users authorized to functions associated with a recipient and the authority levels that each user has been assigned. You can add users to the list, remove users from the list, and change the authority level of users.

When the authority of a recipient is checked, ICOM/400 first checks the user profile. If the user profile is not found, ICOM/400 checks for a group profile. If neither is found, ICOM/400 checks *PUBLIC.

You can specify authority levels in one of two ways:

1. Assign one of the predefined system values for recipient authority level (*USE, *ALL, *CHANGE or *EXCLUDE).
2. Assign user-defined authority levels. User defined authority levels are created by placing or removing X's from the columns.

Whichever technique you use, the system determines the recipient authority values or specific authorities based on the information you have typed. If you type both recipient authority values and specific authorities for a user, the specific authorities are used.

To change the authority level of a user, type over the appropriate columns in the user's row. Except for the "Recipient Authority" column, you give the user the named authority by typing an "X" in the column and remove the authority by typing a blank (spacebar) in the column. To change the "Recipient Authority" column, type the new authority over the current authority.

To add users to the list, press the F6 key (Add new users) to get another display, similar to this display, where you can type the new users and the desired authority levels.

To remove users from the list, type blanks into all of the authorities columns (including the Recipient Authority column) that are shown.

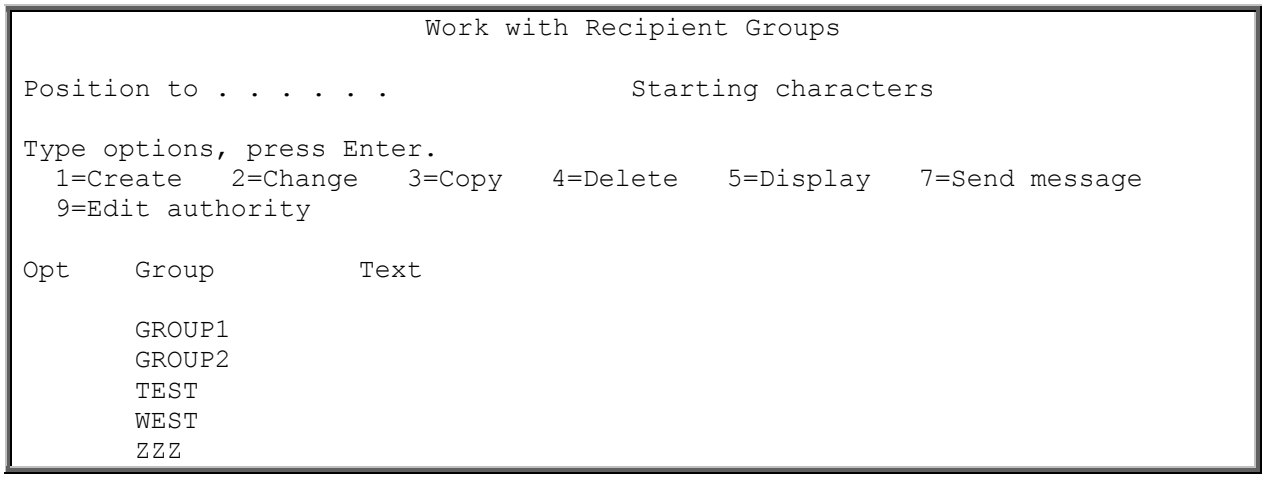
The system applies the authority changes ONLY after you have pressed the Enter key. When you press the Enter key on a display after keying updates, you are shown the list again with the updates applied. If you press the Enter key again, without typing on the display, the system returns you to where you were when you requested the edit function.

Some important fields for the Edit Recipient Authority display include:

- **Recipient**: The name of the recipient whose authority for associated functions you want to edit.
- **User:** The user profile name of users who have specific authorities specified for the associated functions for this recipient. ***PUBLIC** defines the authorities of all users who are not specifically named. To add new users, press F6.
- **Recipient authority:** The authority that a user has to functions associated with a recipient. ***ALL** allows all associated functions for a recipient. ***CHANGE** allows read access of the messages sent to a recipient and the ability to escalate messages for the recipient. ***USE** allows read access of messages sent to a recipient. ***EXCLUDE** excludes the recipient from all associated functions related to the messages. **USER DEF** is displayed by the system when the specific recipient authorities do not map to any of the pre-defined recipient authorities.
- **Send message**: Specify an '**X**' in the **Send Message** field to specify the authority to send a message to the recipient. If this authority is not granted, the **Send Message** field should be blank.
- **List messages:** Specify an '**X**' in the **List Messages** field to specify the authority to list messages sent to the recipient. If this is authority is not granted, the **List Messages** field should be blank.
- **Display message:** Specify an '**X**' in the **Display Message** field to specify the authority to display messages sent to the recipient. If this authority is not granted, the **Display Message** field should be blank.
- **Escalate:** Specify an '**X**' in the **Escalate** field to specify the authority to use an escalation table when sending a message to the recipient.

Option 2 = Work with Recipient Groups

From the ICOM/400 Recipient menu, entering Option 2 on the command line takes you to the Work with Recipient Groups display.



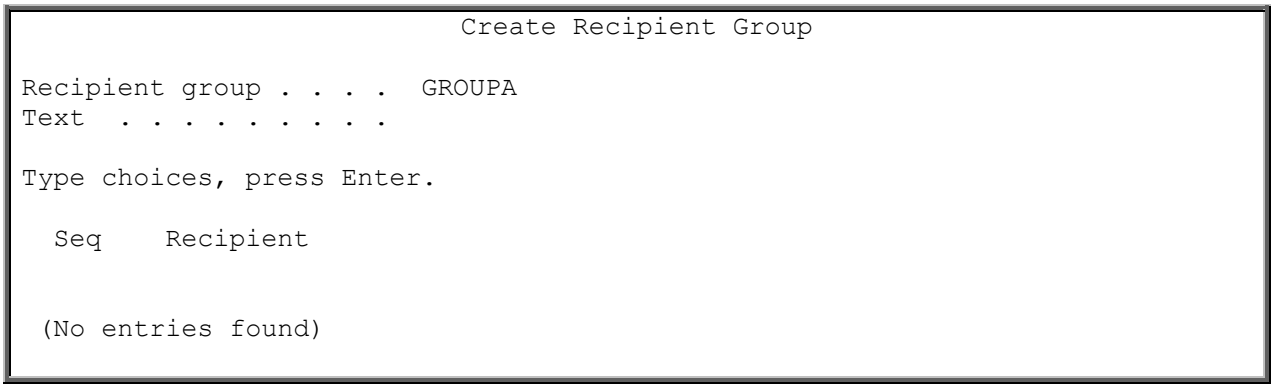
The Work with Recipient Groups display shows all recipient groups that have been defined to ICOM/400. Recipient groups are groups of recipients that you have assigned to receive messages collectively, rather than having individual messages sent to each recipient from ICOM/400.

From this display, you have several options. You can create a new recipient group by entering a **1** on the first line of the **Opt** column, along with the name of the new group. You can change a group that has already been created by typing a **2** beside the group you want to change. Enter a **3** beside a recipient group to copy the group. Delete a recipient group by entering a **4** beside the group you want to delete.

To display a recipient group, enter a **5** beside the group you want to display. You can send a message to a recipient group by entering a **7** beside the group. To edit the authority of a group, enter a **9** beside the group you want to edit.

Adding a Recipient Group

To add a recipient group, type a **1** on the first line of the **Opt** column, along with the name of the recipient group you want to add. Press Enter to go to the Create Recipient Group display.



The Create Recipient Group display is used to create a recipient group identifier and information about that recipient group. Recipient groups consists of a group of recipients that you want to send a message to collectively, rather than having to send each individual recipient a message. **NOTE**: You must press Enter to save your changes. Pressing F3 or F12 will lose any changes that you make.

To add a recipient group, follow the steps below:

1. If you haven't already, enter a name for the recipient group in the **Name** field.
2. Specify a text description of the recipient group in the **Text** field.
3. Enter a sequence number on the first line under the **Sequence** column. Enter the name of a recipient to add to the recipient group under the **Recipient** column.
4. Repeat step 3 until you have added all the recipients you wish to add.
5. Press Enter when you are finished adding recipients. You will be returned to the Work with Recipient Groups display. To exit without saving your changes, press F3 or F12.

Changing a Recipient Group

To change a recipient group, enter **2** beside the group you want to change and press Enter. You are taken to the Change Recipient Group display, where you can make any necessary changes.

To change the sequence number and associated name of a recipient, change the current sequence number to the desired sequence number and press Enter. For instance, if you want to move a sequence number 10 to appear between sequence numbers 30 and 40, change sequence number 10 to 35 and press Enter. The system re-sequences them for you.

To delete a recipient, position the cursor on the sequence number of the recipient and clear the sequence number. Press Enter. Your recipient is deleted and the remaining recipients are resequenced in increments of 10.

Copying a Recipient Group

To copy a recipient group, enter a **3** beside the group you want to copy and press Enter. You are taken to the Copy Recipient Group display. Enter a name for the new group in the **New Name** field. Press Enter to add the new group to the list of existing groups.

Removing a Recipient Group

To delete a recipient group, enter a **4** beside the group(s) you want to delete and press Enter. You are taken to the Confirm Delete of Recipient Groups display. To delete your selected group(s), press Enter, or press F12 to return to the Work with Recipient Groups display to change your selections.

Displaying a Recipient Group

To display a recipient group, enter a **5** beside the group you want to display and press Enter. You are taken to the Display Recipient Group display, where the recipients and their associated sequence numbers are displayed.

Sending a Message to a Recipient Group

To send a message to a recipient group, enter a **7** beside the group and press Enter. You are taken to the Send Message using ICOM/400 (SNDMSGICM) command display. The name of the group is displayed in the **Name** parameter and ***GRP** is specified in the **Send type** parameter. See **Chapter 3** for more information on sending a message.

Edit Group Authority

To edit the authority of a particular group, enter **9** beside the group and press Enter. You are taken to the Edit Group Authority display.

```
                              Edit Group Authority

Group  . . . . . . . . . . . . :  GROUP1
Text . . . . . . . . . . . . . :


Type changes to current authorities, press Enter.

            Group
User        Authority
*PUBLIC     *USE
```

When the authority of a recipient group is checked, ICOM/400 first checks the user profile. If the user profile is not found, ICOM/400 checks for a group profile. If neither is found, ICOM/400 checks *PUBLIC.

To change the "Group Authority" column, type the new authority over the current authority.

To add users to the list, press the F6 key (Add new users) to get another display, similar to this display, where you can type the new users and the desired group authority.

To remove users from the list, type blanks into the Group Authority column.

The system applies the authority changes ONLY after you have pressed the Enter key. When you press the Enter key on a display after keying updates, you are shown the list again with the updates applied. If you press the Enter key again, without typing on the display, the system returns you to where you were when you requested the edit function.

Some important fields for the Edit Group Authority display include:

- **Group**: The name of the recipient group whose authority you want to edit
- **User**: The user profile name of users who have specific authorities specified for the associated recipient group. ***PUBLIC** defines the authorities of all users who are not specifically named. To add users, press F6.
- **Group authority**: The authority that a user has to functions associated with a recipient group. Several system-defined group authority levels may be assigned to users. ***USE** allows the user to send a message to the recipient group. ***EXCLUDE** excludes the user from being able to send a message to the recipient group.

Option 3 = Work with Schedules

Entering Option 3 on a command line from the Recipient Information display takes you to the Work with Schedules display.

```
                              Work with Schedules

Position to . . . . . .               Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add   2=Change   3=Copy   4=Remove   5=Display

Opt    Schedule      Text

       HMMMMM        *NONE
       LATEST        *NONE
       LBSSCHED      *NONE
       SAMPLE        Sample - off hours
       TEST          test
```

The Work with Schedules display shows all schedules that are defined to ICOM/400. Schedules are user-defined groupings of dates that suggest when ICOM/400 processing should be used. Schedules have many uses, including specifying a recipient's availability and on-call schedules, scheduling a monitor to monitor your job events, or for message queue or QHST entry scheduling.

From this display, you have many options. You may add a schedule (**Option 1**), change an existing schedule (**Option 2**), or copy a schedule (**Option 3**). You may also remove a schedule (**Option 4**) or display a schedule (**Option 5**).

Adding a Schedule

To add a schedule, enter a 1 on the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name of the schedule you want to add. Press Enter to go to the Add Schedule display.

```
                                 Add Schedule

Schedule name . . . . .  WEEKDAYS          Position to  . . . . .
Text  . . . . . . . . .  *NONE

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add   4=Remove

Opt   From Date    To Date       From Time    To Time  Inc/Exc
                                    0:00        0:00

 (No entries found)
```

The Add Schedule display is used to add the special values and dates that make up the schedule. You can use a schedule to specifically include dates, such as all the days of the year that you want to utilize for notification purposes or special values such as ***FRI** (Friday) to specify days that you want ICOM/400 to utilize. For example, you could specify a schedule for all Mondays through Fridays by specifying ***MON**, ***TUE**, ***WED**, ***THU**, and ***FRI**. This schedule would allow the messages to be issued to the appropriate recipient each Monday through Friday. You can also specify dates like 04/22/03 as dates to include in a schedule. You can add an unlimited number of specific dates and times to make up a schedule.

From this display, you may add (**Option 1**) or remove (**Option 4**) a schedule entry.

To add an individual schedule entry, follow the steps below:

1. Enter a **1** in the first line under the **Opt** column.
2. Specify the beginning date of the date range for this schedule entry in the **From date** field.
3. Specify the ending date of the date range for this schedule entry in the **To date** field.
4. Specify the beginning time of the time range for this schedule entry in the **From time** field. If the "From time" is greater than the "To time," then the "To time" specified is assumed to be the next day.
5. Specify the ending time of the time range for this schedule entry in the **To time** field.
6. Specify whether the date entry should be excluded or included in the list of schedule entries. ***INC** specifies that the schedule should be included in the list of schedules. ***EXC** specifies that the schedules should be excluded from the list of schedules. If there are no schedule entries with *INC, it is assumed that all days are included except specific exceptions.

To remove an individual schedule, follow the steps below:

1. Enter a **4** beside the schedule entry(s) you want to remove.
2. Press Enter to go to the Confirm Remove of Schedule Entries display.
3. To remove the entry(s), press Enter or F12 to return to the previous display to change your selections.

Changing a Schedule

To change an existing schedule, enter a **2** beside the schedule on the Work with Schedules display. Press Enter to go to the Change Schedule display. For more information on adding and removing schedule entries, see **Adding a Schedule**. **Note:** You cannot change a schedule entry, so you must delete the entry within the schedule and add another schedule with your changes.

Copying a Schedule

To copy an existing schedule, enter a **3** beside the schedule on the Work with Schedules display. Press Enter to go to the Copy Schedule display. Enter the name of the new schedule in the **New Name** field. Press Enter to copy the schedule and add it to the list of existing schedules.

Removing a Schedule

To remove an existing schedule, enter a **4** beside the schedule(s) on the Work with Schedules display. Press Enter to go the Confirm Remove of Schedules display. Press Enter to remove the schedule(s), or press F12 to return to the Work with Schedules display to change your selections.

Displaying a Schedule

To display an existing schedule, enter a **5** beside the schedule on the Work with Schedules display. Press Enter to go the Display Schedule display. For more information on the fields displayed, see **Adding a Schedule**.

Option 4 = Work with Pager Companies

To go to the Work with Pager Companies display, enter **Option 4** on the command line of the Recipient Information menu.

```
                          Work with Pager Companies

Position to . . . . . .              Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add  2=Change  3=Copy  4=Remove  5=Display  6=Work with recipients

Opt Company     Text

    BELLSOUTH   *NONE
    BELLSOUTH2  *NONE
    BLACKDOG    *NONE
    SAMPLE      Example company
    SKYTEL      *NONE
    SPRINT      *NONE
    SPRINT2     *NONE
    TEST        *NONE
```

The Work with Pager Companies display shows all pager companies that have been defined to ICOM/400. Pager companies supply pagers that you use and want to define to ICOM/400.

From this display, you have several options. You may add (**Option 1**) a pager company, change an existing company (**Option 2**), or copy a company (**Option 3**). You may also remove an existing company or companies (**Option 4**), display a company (**Option 5**), or work with the recipients that use a certain pager company (**Option 6**).

Adding a Pager Company

To add a pager company, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Pager Companies display. Press Enter to go to the Add Pager Company display.

```
                             Add Pager Company

Type choices, press Enter.

Pager company . . . . . .   BLACKDOG     Name
Contact name  . . . . . .
Address line 1  . . . . . .
Address line 2  . . . . . .
Computer phone number . . . . . .
2-way communication type  . . . . .   *NONE        *NONE, *BELLSOUTH
Mailbox user ID . . . . . .
Mailbox password  . . . . . .
Pager company password  . . . . . .               Characters
Maximum message length  . . . . . .   240         Number (1-999)
Maximum paging queue depth  . . . .     1         Number (1-999)
Maximum paging queue time . . . . .     0         Number (0-3600)
Maximum pages per connection  . . .   9999        Number (1-9999)
```

```
Number of retries . . . . . .     3          Number (1-9)
Limit one page per message  . . . .  *NO          *NO, *YES
Sending system  . . . . . .  *LCL         Name, *LCL
```

```
                              Add Pager Company

Type choices, press Enter.

Modem rate  . . . . . .    1200        300, 600, 1200, 2400, 9600
Parity  . . . . . .  *EVEN        *EVEN, *ODD, *NONE
Data bits . . . . . .  7           7, 8
Stop bits . . . . . .  1           1, 2
Duplex  . . . . . .  *FULL        *FULL, *HALF
Text  . . . . . .  *NONE
```

The Add Pager Company display is used to add a pager company and technical information about that pager company. Pager companies are companies from which you rent or purchase pager equipment. You can have an unlimited number of pager companies.

Some important fields on the Add Pager Company display include:

- **Pager company:** The name of the pager company that you are adding.
- **Computer phone number:** The phone number of the computer that ICOM/400 will dial to establish communications with the pager company. You can enter characters required to dial the computer phone number such as a 9 for an outside line. If a pause is required, you can use the "," character. Each comma will cause a one second delay. Dashes in the phone number are acceptable. **NOTE:** You should not use dialing characters here if you are using two resources (have 2 lines). The dialing characters should be entered for each line in the **Telephone prefix** field in the Change System Attributes display (See **Chapter 9**).
- **2-way communication type**: The type of two-way communication that you want to use. ***NONE** specifies that you do not want to use two-way communication. ***BELLSOUTH** indicates that you want to use Bellsouth's two-way communication. **NOTE:** You must be signed up with Bellsouth in order to be able to use their two-way communication service.
- **Mailbox user ID**: The mailbox user ID for your paging company. This mailbox is used for reply messages that have been sent as a result of two-way paging. All reply messages sent to the pager company will be put in this mailbox. If you are not using BellSouth's paging service, this field will be left blank.
- **Mailbox password**: The password for the mailbox user ID.
- **Pager company password:** The password required for the pager company, if any. The password can be up to 10 characters in length.
- **Maximum message length:** The maximum message length for this pager company. The message length specified can be from 1 to 999 characters. The default value is 240 characters.
- **Maximum paging queue depth:** The maximum number of message that can enter the queue before the messages are transmitted for this company. If the maximum number of messages is reached before the maximum queue time specified in the **Maximum paging queue time** field is reached, ICOM/400 will transmit the pages, regardless of the specified paging queue times. The queue depth can be from 1 to 999 messages. The default value is 1 message.
- **Maximum paging queue time:** The maximum time in seconds before messages that are in the queue for this company are transmitted. If the maximum number of seconds is reached before the maximum number of pages specified in the **Maximum paging queue depth** field is reached, ICOM/400 will transmit the pages, regardless of the specified paging queue depth. The maximum time specified can be from 0 (send immediately) to 3600 seconds. The default value is 0.
- **Maximum pages per connection:** The maximum number of page messages that can be included in a transmission to the pager company. You should contact your paging company to determine the maximum number of pages that they can handle in a single transmission. If you

have set the maximum queue depth at 100 and specified a maximum pages per connect of 10 for the page company, ICOM/400 will break the 100 pages into 10 groups of 10. The default value is 9999 pages.

- **Number of retries:** The number of times that ICOM/400 will re-dial the pager company. ICOM/400 will continue re-dialing until a connection is made or the number of retries is exceeded. This value can range from 1 to 9 retries. The default is 3 retries.
- **Limit one page per message:** Sometimes, pager messages are longer than the maximum message length. If ***NO** is specified, multiple pages will be sent. If ***YES** is specified, only one page will be sent.
- **Sending system:** The system in the network that sends messages for this company. Messages can be entered from any terminal on your network. The messages are routed to the sending system by ICOM/400. ***LCL** specifies that messages are sent through the modem on the originating system.
- **Modem rate:** The line speed that you want to use for pager equipment for this company. These include: 300 bps, 600 bps, 1200 bps, 2400 bps, 9600 bps. Most paging companies use 2400 baud or less.
- **Parity:** The type of parity that you want to use for pager equipment. ***EVEN** specifies that the line is configured with even parity. ***ODD** specifies that the line is configured with odd parity. ***NONE** specifies that there is no parity configured for the line.
- **Data bits:** The number of data bits that you want to use for pager equipment for this company (7 or 8).
- **Stop bits:** The number of data bits that you want to use for pager equipment for this company (1 or 2).
- **Duplex:** Whether or not the pager equipment for this company supports full (two-way communication) or half (one way communication) duplex.

Changing a Pager Company

To change an existing pager company, enter a **2** beside the company that you want to change on the Work with Pager Companies display. Press enter to go to the Change Pager Company display. See **Adding a Pager Company** for more information on the fields of this display.

Copying a Pager Company

To copy a pager company, enter a **3** beside the company that you want to copy on the Work with Pager Companies display. Press Enter to go to the Copy Pager Company display. Enter the name of the new company in the **New name** field and press Enter to add the pager company.

Removing a Pager Company

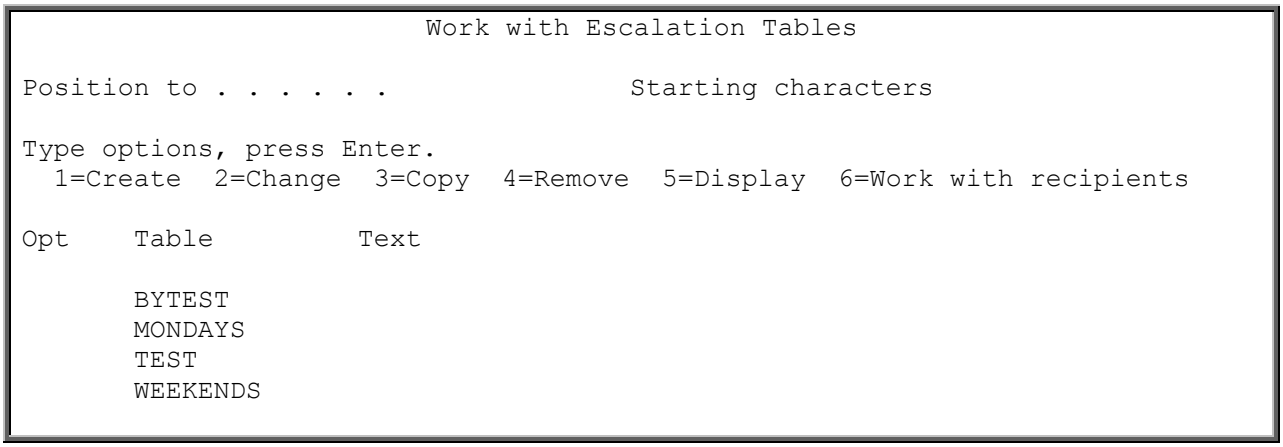
To remove a pager company, enter a **4** beside the company(s) that you want to remove on the Work with Pager Companies display. Press Enter to go to the Confirm Remove of Pager Companies display. Press Enter to remove the pager company(s) you have selected, or press F12 to return to the Work with Pager Companies display to change your selections.

Displaying a Pager Company

To display a pager company, enter a **5** beside the company that you want to display on the Work with Pager Companies display. Press Enter to go to the Display Pager Company display. See **Adding a Pager Company** for more information on the fields of this display.

Option 5 = Work with Escalation Tables

Entering Option 5 on the command line from the Recipient Information menu takes to you the Work with Escalation Tables display.

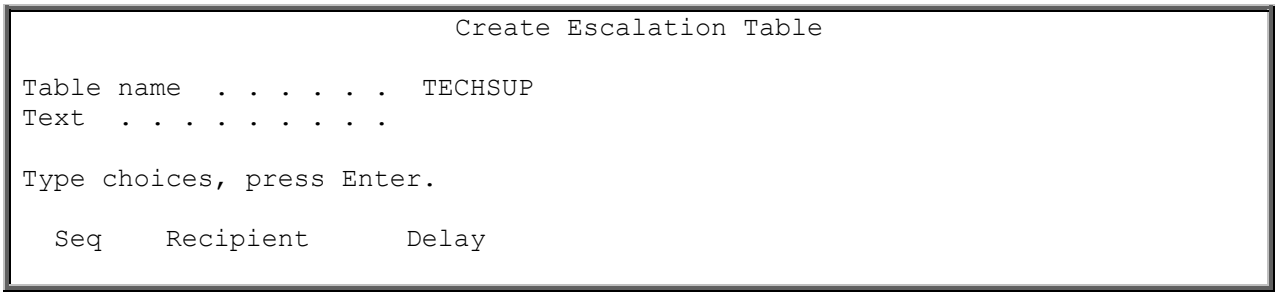


An escalation table is a group of recipients to whom a message will escalate with the passage of time. An escalation table takes effect after the recipient to whom the message was sent originally does not respond to the message before the number of minutes specified in the **Delay** field for the first recipient in the escalation table. Recipients in each table are ordered in the sequence that you want them to receive the message. A delay time is assigned between recipients to allow a recipient in the escalation table to respond to the message. Once a recipient responds to the message by acknowledging the message in the Work with History display or replying to a two-way message, the escalation process ends. You can use special values to end the message when it has gone through the entire group once or to repeat the message until it has responded to by one of the recipients in the group.

The Work with Escalation Tables display shows all escalation tables that have been defined to ICOM/400. From this display, you have several options. You can add a new escalation table (**Option 1**), change an existing table (**Option 2**), or copy a table (**Option 3**). You can also remove an existing table (**Option 4**), display the contents of a table (**Option 5**), or work with recipients that contain a particular table (**Option 6**).

Adding an Escalation Table

To add an escalation table, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name of the new table. Press Enter to go to the Create Escalation Table display.



The Create Escalation Table display is used to create an escalation table and the characteristics of that table.

Some important fields for this display include the following:

- **Recipient:** The name of the recipient whom you want to add to the table. If you need to select a recipient from a list, place the cursor on the **Recipient** field and press F4. Some special values for this field include:
  - ***END:** An optional special value that may be placed at the logical end of the escalation entries. The ***END** special value can occur anywhere in the recipient list. Only recipients prior to the ***END** special value in the recipient list will receive messages.
  - ***REPEAT:** This special value will cause the escalation process to repeat from the original recipient through each recipient in the escalation table. When the ***REPEAT** special value is processed, each message generated from this pass through the escalation table is flagged as "EXPIRED," and a new pass is started, beginning with the original recipient. This process will continue forever, or until one of the messages in the process is acknowledged. The ***REPEAT** special value can occur anywhere in the recipient list. Only recipients prior to the ***REPEAT** special value in the recipient list will receive messages.
  - ***ORIGINAL:** This special value will cause the escalation process to send the message to the recipient to which the message was originally sent.
- **Delay**: The length of time in minutes that must pass before the corresponding recipient will be sent a message. If a zero value delay time is entered, the message will escalate immediately.

Changing an Escalation Table

To change an existing escalation table, enter a **2** beside the table you want to change on the Work with Escalation Tables display. Press Enter to go to the Change Escalation Table display. For more information on this display's fields, refer to **Adding an Escalation Table**.

Copying an Escalation Table

To copy an escalation table, enter a **3** beside the table you want to copy on the Work with Escalation Tables display. Press Enter to go to the Copy Escalation Table display. Enter the name of the new table in the **New Name** field and press Enter to copy the table.

Removing an Escalation Table

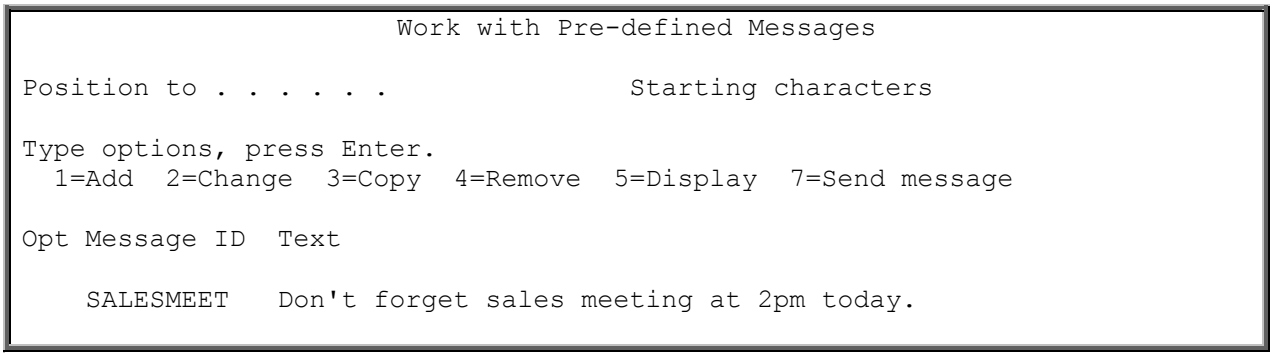
To remove an escalation table, enter a **4** beside the table(s) that you want remove and press Enter. You are taken to the Confirm Remove of Escalation Tables display. Press Enter to remove the table(s) or F12 to return to the Work with Escalation Tables display to change your selections.

Displaying an Escalation Table

To display the contents of an escalation table, enter a **5** beside the table that you want to display and press Enter. You are taken to the Display Escalation Table display. For more information on this display's fields, see **Adding an Escalation Table**.

Option 6 = Work with Pre-Defined Messages

To go to the Work with Pre-Defined Messages display, enter **6** on the command line of the Recipient Information menu.



The Work with Pre-defined Messages display shows all message Ids that have been defined to ICOM/400. Pre-defined messages are messages that you want to use repetitively and do no want to re-key each time you want to send the message. Each message is assigned a message ID to facilitate use of the pre-defined message.

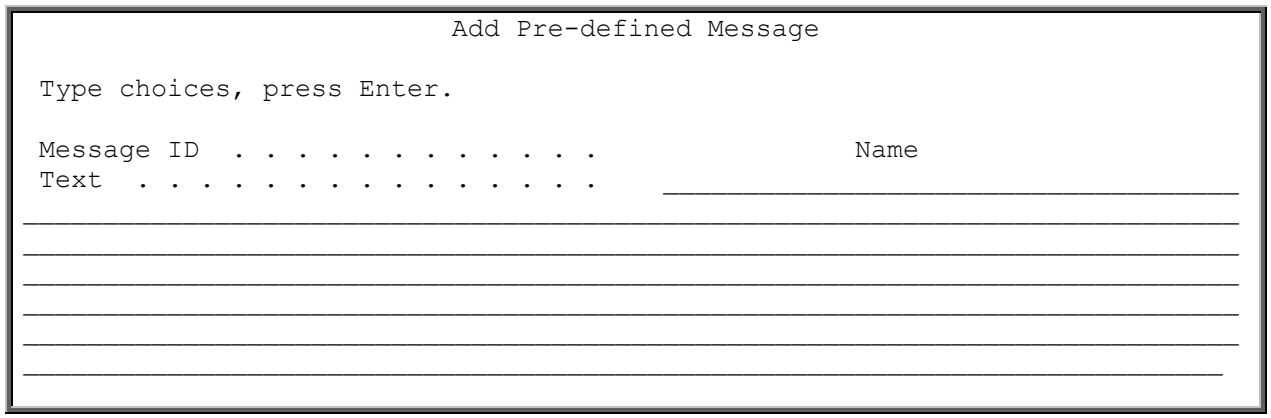
Pre-defined messages can also be used with the ***PHONE** delivery method to send a phone number to a numeric pager. You can specify the pager number in the **Message** field. When you want to send a page to a recipient using the SNDMSGICM command, you just have to enter the Message ID in the **Message** parameter, or place a **7** beside the message ID you want to send on the Work with Pre-defined Messages display. See the ***PHONE** delivery method for more information.

Pre-defined messages can also be assigned to Actions. You can set-up a monitor to initialize a specific Action that sends your pre-defined message whenever a specific condition that the monitor is monitoring is met.

You have several options on this display. You can add a new pre-defined message (**Option 1**), change an existing message (**Option 2**), or copy a message (**Option 3**). You can also remove a message (**Option 4**), display a message (**Option 5**), or send the message to a selected recipient (**Option 7**).

Adding a Pre-defined Message

To add a pre-defined message, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column. Press Enter to go to Add Pre-defined Message display.



The Add Pre-defined Message display is used to add a pre-defined message identifier and text for the message. Pre-defined messages are messages that you want to use repetitively and that you do not want to re-key each time you send the message.

Some important fields on this display include the following:

- **Message ID**: The message ID of the pre-defined message.

- **Text**: The body of the pre-defined message.

Changing a Pre-defined Message

To change a pre-defined message, enter a **2** beside the message you want to change on the Work with Pre-defined Messages display. Press Enter to go to the Change Pre-defined Message display. For more information on the fields of this display, refer to **Adding a Pre-defined Message**.

Copying a Pre-defined Message

To copy a pre-defined message, enter a **3** beside the message you want to copy on the Work with Pre-defined Messages display. Press Enter to go to the Copy Pre-defined Message display. Enter the name of the new message in the **New name** field. Press Enter to add your new message and return to the Work with Pre-defined Messages display.

Removing a Pre-defined Message

To remove a pre-defined message, enter a **4** beside the message(s) that you want to remove and press Enter. You are taken to the Confirm Remove of Pre-defined Messages display. Press Enter to remove your message(s), or F12 to return to the Work with Pre-defined Messages display, where you can change your selections.

Displaying a Pre-defined Message

To display a pre-defined message, enter a **5** beside the message you want to display on the Work with Pre-defined Messages display. Press Enter to go to the Display Pre-defined Message display. For more information on the fields of this display, see **Adding a Pre-defined Message**.

Sending a Pre-defined Message

To send a pre-defined message, enter a **7** beside the message you want to send on the Work with Pre-defined Messages display. Press Enter to go to the Send Message using ICOM/400 (SNDMSGICM) command display. Note that your pre-defined message text is entered into the **Text** field. For more information on sending a message, refer to **Chapter 3**.

Option 9 = Work with IP Entries

Enter Option 9 on the command line takes you to the Work with IP entries display.

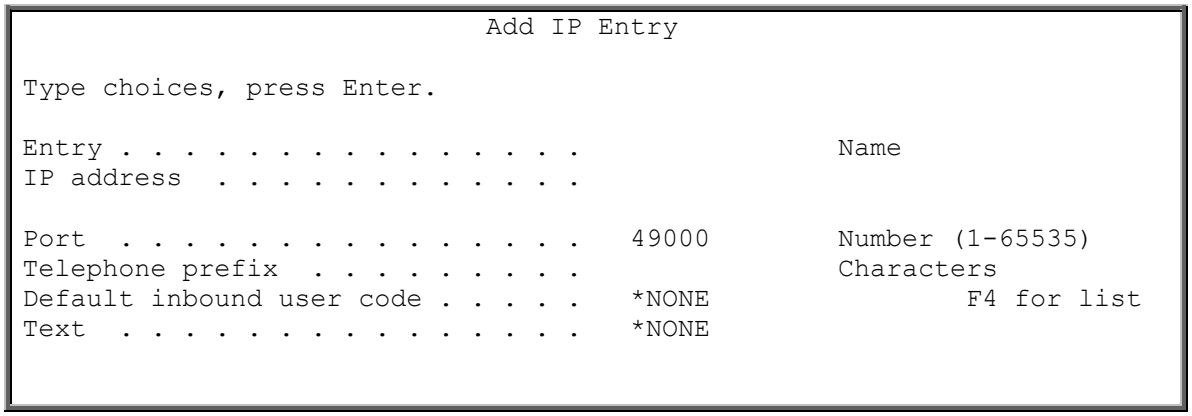
```
                              Work with IP Entries
Position to . . . . . .              Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add  2=Change  3=Copy  4=Remove  5=Display  7=Test connection

Opt Entry       Text

    BRIANPC     Brian's PC
    HEATHERPC   *NONE
    JULIAPC     *NONE
    LANCEPC     Lance's PC
```

An IP entry is the IP address of the PC through which the voice message will be sent. ICOM/400 will send a text message to the IP address specified. In turn, the PC will take the message, recognize the text, and, using a *PHONE delivery type, call the phone number specified and play the message over the phone. The recipient then has the option of responding to the message by pressing a button on their phone.

From the Work with IP entries display, you can add (**Option 1**), change (**Option 2**), copy (**Option 3**), remove (**Option 4**), and display (**Option 5**) IP entries, as well as test your connection to the IP address of the IP entry.

Adding an IP Entry

To add an IP entry, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column. Press Enter to go to Add IP Entry display.



The Add IP Entry display is used to add an IP entry for the PC that will send the voice message.

Some important fields include the following:

- **IP address**: The IP address of the PC you will use for voice messaging. The format for an IP address is 000.000.000.000.
  - **NOTE**: To find out the IP address of a machine, if using a Windows operating system, go to your Start button > Run and then type '**command**' if running Win 9x or '**cmd**' if running Win NT or 2000. At the prompt and type **Route print**. There should be four columns of numbers on the screen. The IP address of the machine is the top number on the column labeled **Interface**.
- **Port**: The port of the PC on which the voice software is running. This can be a number between 1 and 65535. The default value is port 49000.
- **Default inbound user code**: Specify the default user code that ICOM/400 will use for the Inbound Voice feature. ***NONE** indicates that you do not have a default user code. To bring up a list of existing user codes, press F4.
- **Telephone prefix**: A telephone prefix is a number or symbol that needs to be placed in front of a telephone number that you will dial with your PC modem. For example, you might have to dial a 9 (or other number) to get an outside line, or enter a code that is to be used for tracking and billing purposes. Commas can be used when a pause is required before dialing the number. Each comma represents a one or two second delay.

Changing an IP Entry

To change an IP entry, enter a **2** beside the entry you want to change on the Work with IP Entries display. Press Enter to go to the Change IP Entry display. For more information on the fields of this display, refer to **Adding an IP Entry**.

Copying an IP Entry

To copy an IP entry, enter a **3** beside the entry you want to copy on the Work with IP Entries display. Press Enter to go to the Copy IP Entry display. Enter the name of the new entry in the **New name** field. Press Enter to add your new entry and return to the Work with IP Entries display.

Removing an IP Entry

To remove an IP entry, enter a **4** beside the entry(ies) that you want to remove and press Enter. You are taken to the Confirm Remove of IP Entries display. Press Enter to remove your entry(ies), or F12 to return to the Work with IP Entries display, where you can change your selections.

Displaying an IP Entry

To display an IP entry, enter a **5** beside the entry you want to display on the Work with IP Entries display. Press Enter to go to the Display IP Entry display. For more information on the fields of this display, see **Adding an IP Entry**.

Chapter 7 - History Information

History information is another important function within ICOM/400. You must be able to keep track of what messages get sent, when and to whom. You also need to keep track of any communication errors that might occur as a result of ICOM/400 processing.

From the ICOM/400 Main Menu, select Option 5 (History Information) and press Enter. You are taken to the History Information menu, where you have several choices.

```
ICMHIST                        History Information

 Select one of the following:

      1. Remove history
      2. Display log
      3. Remove log entries
      4. Display resource #1 communication entries
      5. Print resource #1 communication entries
      6. Display resource #2 communication entries
      7. Print resource #2 communication entries

     10. Display e-mail communication entries
     11. Print e-mail communication entries
     12. Display fax communication entries
     13. Print fax communication entries

     20. Display QHST
```

Option 1 = Remove History

Entering Option 1 on a command line takes you to the Remove ICOM/400 History command display.

```
                      Remove ICOM/400 History (RMVHSTICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Company  . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, *ALL
Recipient  . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, *ALL, *NONE
Recipient Group  . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, *ALL
From date  . . . . . > *BEGIN        Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn
To date  . . . . . > 30             Date, *CURRENT, nnnnn
Entry status . . . . . .   *ALL          *ALL, *SENT, *PEND, *ERROR...
Escalation status  . . . . . .   *ALL          *ALL, *ESCING, *ACKD...
```

The Remove ICOM/400 History command display allows you to clear the ICOM/400 history based on parameters you specify. You can remove all history or only specific history that you specify.

Some important fields include:

- **Company**: The name of the pager company or companies for which you want to remove history entries. ***ALL** specifies that you want to remove history entries for all companies that meet other specified criteria.
- **Recipient:** The name of the recipient or recipients for which you want to remove history entries. ***ALL** specifies that you want to remove entries for all recipients.

- **Recipient group:** The name of the recipient group or groups for which you want to remove history entries.
- **From and To dates:** The date range for which you want to remove history entries. ***CURRENT** specifies the current date. For **From date**, ***BEGIN** indicates to remove history from the beginning date in the log. **nnnnn** specifies the number of days from the current date for which you want to remove history entries. An example would be 10 in the **From date** parameter. If today's date were 3/12/03, the From date would be 3/2/03.
- **Entry status:** The status of the history entries that you want to remove. These statuses include:
  - ***SENT**
  - ***PEND**
  - ***ERROR**
  - ***HELD**
  - ***SCHED**
  - ***READY**
- **Escalation status:** The escalation status of the history entries you want to remove. These statuses include:
  - ***ESCING**
  - ***ACKD**
  - ***ESCD**
  - ***EXPD**
  - ***NONE**

Press Enter to remove the history that you have specified. You are returned to the History Information menu.

Option 2 = Display Log

To display the ICOM/400 history log, enter a **2** on the command line of the History Information menu. Press Enter to go to the Display Log for ICOM/400 (DSPLOGICM) command display.

```
                    Display Log for ICOM/400 (DSPLOGICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Type . . . . . .   *ALL          *ALL, *MSG, *MNT, *REPLY
Time period for log output:
  Start time and date:
  Beginning time . . . . . .   *AVAIL        Time, *AVAIL
  Beginning date . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn
  End time and date:
  Ending time  . . . . . .   *AVAIL        Time, *AVAIL
  Ending date  . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn
Severity . . . . . .   00           00-99
Output . . . . . .   *            *, *PRINT
```

The Display Log for ICOM/400 (DSPLOGICM) command allows you to display the ICOM/400 history log. The ICOM/400 history log is a display by date and time of messages that ICOM/400 has created as a result of processing. The DSPLOGICM command allows you to display or print all or part of the log.

Some important fields on the DSPLOGICM command display include the following:

- **Type:** The type of entry for which you want to review log entries. ***ALL** selects all log entries for display. ***MSG** selects only message log entries for display. ***MNT** selects only maintenance log entries for display. ***REPLY** selects only reply log entries for display.

- **Time period for log output**: The period of time for which the log entries are selected for display or report. You must specify the beginning time and date, as well as the ending time and date for the date range.
- **Severity**: The message severity level that you want to include in the report or display.
- **User**: The name of the user profile for log entries that you want to display or print.
- **Message identifier**: The message identifier for log entries that you want to display or print.

When you press Enter (and you have specified ***** in the **Output** field), you are taken to the Display ICM Log Information display.

```
3/16/03                  Display ICM Log Information
13:33:16                                      Position to . . . .  3/16/03

-------------------------------  3/16/03 ---------------------------------
18 records were removed from the ICM activity file.
25 records were removed from the ICOM/400 history file.
270 entries were removed from the ICM log.
Pre-defined message SALESMEET added.
```

Based on the parameters requested in the DSPLOGICM command, the display lists text messages associated with ICOM/400 processing. You can specify a severity level for messages to be included in the display. Messages with severity levels equal to or greater than the selected severity level will be included in the display. For example, if you specified 30, all messages with a severity level of 30 or higher would be selected for the display. If the display does not contain the information needed, you can run the command additional times with different values specified.

For any message that you want to see additional information, place the cursor on the message and press Help or F1 to go to the Additional ICM Log Information display where you can review the entire message, plus any additional information that is available. Press F3, F12 or Enter to return to the Display Log ICM Information display.

```
                        Additional ICM Log Information

Message ID . . . . . . . . . : ICM2196       Severity . . . . . . . . : 00

Job . . . : RMVATVICM    User . . :  QPGMR         Number . . . . : 021336
Date sent  . . . . . . . . . :  3/16/03      Time sent  . . . . . . :  0:01:05
Program  . . . . . . . . . . : ICMRRATV      Area . . . . . . . . . . : *MNT


Message . . . . :   18 records were removed from the ICM activity file.
```

The Additional ICM Log Information display is a result of pressing Help or F1 when the cursor is positioned on a message on the Display ICM Log Information display. The Additional ICM Log Information display gives the complete message that you requested with the Help or F1 key as well as additional message text. To return to the Display ICM Log Information display, press Enter, F3 or F12.

Some important fields on this display include the following:

- **Message ID**: The message ID that is associated with the text description
- **Severity**: The severity level of the message
- **Job**: The name of the job that produced the message
- **User**: The user who submitted the job that produced the message
- **Number**: The number of the job that produced the message
- **Date and Time sent**: The date and time that the message was sent to the log
- **Program**: The name of the program that produced the message
- **Area**: The type of entry that produced the log entry

- **Message**: The full text of the message. If applicable, there is further descriptive text in the Additional message prompt.

Option 3 = Remove Log Entries

To remove log entries from ICOM/400, enter a **3** on the command line of the History Information display. Press Enter to go to the Remove ICOM/400 Log Entries (RMVLOGICM) display.

```
                    Remove ICOM/400 Log Entries (RMVLOGEICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Type . . . . . .   *ALL          *ALL, *MSG, *MNT
From date  . . . . . . . . . . > *BEGIN        Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn
To date  . . . . . . . . . . . > 30            Date, *CURRENT, nnnnn
```

The Remove ICOM/400 Log Entries (RMVLOGEICM) command allows you to clear the ICOM/400 log based on a date range you specify.

Some important fields for this display include the following:

- **Type:** The type of entries that you want to clear from the ICOM/400 log. Examples of types of entries are messages (***MSG**) or maintenance (***MNT**).
- **From and To dates:** The date range for the entries that you want to clear.

Options 4 and 6 = Display Resource Communication Entries (#1 and #2)

To display a resource communication entry, enter a **4** (for resource #1) or **6** (for resource #2) on the command line of the History Information menu.

```
                        Display Physical File Member

File . . . . . :   ICMASDL             Library  . . . . :   ICOM400
Member . . . . :   ICMASDL             Record . . . . . :   1
Control  . . . . .                     Column . . . . . :   1
Find . . . . . .
*...+....1....+....2....+....3....+....4....+....5....+....6....+....7....+..
 °    ±0000<ATE0Q0V1
 °    ¤0000>  OK
 °    ¤0000<ATDT 9,18008682835
 °    |0000>  CONNECT 2400
 °    |0000<
 °    "0310>
 °    "0000<
 °    ¤0310>
 °    ¤0000<
 °     0000>ID=
 °     0000< 2Q1briany
 °     0000>   Good Morning  Processing Pages  ¢p
 °     0000< briany 0  2=4
 °     0000>    brianyounger 0142 00 031099111229 ::6031099111229Back at ya
 °    "0000> brianyounger 0142 00 031099111229 ::6031099111229Back at ya
```

This menu option executes the Display Physical File Member (DSPPFM) command to display all the ICOM/400 instructions associated with the last message sent using ICOM/400. This file is used to identify problems, if any, with a particular message.

The Display Physical File Member display presents the information in a selected file member and allows you to look at the data.

Options 5 and 7 = Print Resource Communications Entries (#1 and #2)

To print the resource communication entries, enter **5** (Resource #1) or **7** (Resource #2) on the command line of the History Information menu. The communications entries are printed to a spooled file.

Options 10 = Display E-mail Communications Entries

To display the e-mail communications entries, enter **10** on the command line of the History Information menu.

```
                        Display Physical File Member

File . . . . . :   ICMASML             Library  . . . . :   ICOM400
Member . . . . . :   ICMASML           Record . . . . . :   1
Control  . . . . .                     Column . . . . . :   1
Find . . . . . .
*...+....1....+....2....+....3....+....4....+....5....+....6....+....7....+..
       100 >Validating server smtp.webzone.net
       000 >============================================================
       100 >Requesting connection with mailserver 205.219.23.7
       250 <Connection with mail server 205.219.23.7 granted.
       100 >HELO pbsnow.com
       250 <250 yoda.webzone.net
       100 >mail from: <icom@pbsnow.com>
       250 <250 Sender <icom@pbsnow.com> Ok
       100 >rcpt to: <LANCE@PBSNOW.COM>
       250 <250 Recipient <LANCE@PBSNOW.COM> Ok
       100 >data
       354 <354 Ok Send data ending with <CRLF>.<CRLF>
       100 >Sending message data.
       100 >Sending attachment header.
       100 >Sending attachment data.
```

This menu option executes the Display Physical File Member (DSPPFM) command to display all the ICOM/400 instructions associated with the last e-mail message sent using ICOM/400. This file is used to identify problems, if any, with a particular message.

The Display Physical File Member display presents information in a selected file member and allows you to look at the data.

Option 11 = Print E-mail Communications Entries

To print the e-mail communications entries, enter **11** on the command line of the History Information menu. The communications entries are printed to a spooled file.

Option 12 = Display Fax Communications Entries

To display the fax communications entries, enter **12** on the command line of the History Information menu.

```
                          Display Physical File Member
File . . . . . :   ICMASDL5            Library  . . . . :   ICOM400
Member . . . . :   ICMASDL5            Record . . . . . :   1
Control  . . . .                       Column . . . . . :   1
Find . . . . . .
*...+....1....+....2....+....3....+....4....+....5....+....6....+....7....+.
   ÈcÀ"0000 Converting Cover Page to T4IMAGE.
   ÈcÀ"0000 Converted cover page.
   ÈcÀ"0000 File converted
   ÈcÀ"0000 1 pages converted without error.
   ÈcÀ"0000 Opening device PMPGMDV5.
   ÈcÀ"0000<ATZ
   ÈcÀ"0000>OK
   ÈcÀ"0000<AT+FCLASS=?
   ÈcÀ"0000>0,1,2
   ÈcÀ"0000 Class 2 Fax/Modem detected OK.
   ÈcÀ"0000>OK
   ÈcÀ"0000<AT&K3
   ÈcÀ"0000>OK
   ÈcÀ"0000<AT+FCLASS=2
   ÈcÀ"0000>OK
```

This menu option executes the Display Physical File Member (DSPPFM) command to display all the ICOM/400 instructions associated with the last fax message sent using ICOM/400. This file is used to identify problems, if any, with a particular message.

The Display Physical File Member display presents information in a selected file member and allows you to look at the data.

Option 13 = Print Fax Communications Entries

To print the fax communication entries, enter **13** on the command line of the History Information menu. The entries are printed to a spooled file.

Option 20 = Display QHST

To display the QHST message log, enter **20** on the command line of the History Information menu. You are taken to the Display QHST using ICOM/400 (DSPQHSTICM) command display.

```
                    Display QHST using ICOM/400 (DSPQHSTICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Time period for QHST output:
  Start time and date:
  Beginning time . . . . . .   *AVAIL        Time, *AVAIL
  Beginning date . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn
  End time and date:
  Ending time  . . . . . . .   *AVAIL        Time, *AVAIL
  Ending date  . . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn
Message ID . . . . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, *ALL
             + for more values
Exclude Message ID . . . . .   *NONE         Name, *NONE
             + for more values
Severity . . . . . . . . . .   00            00-99
Output . . . . . . . . . . .   *             *, *PRINT
```

The Display QHST using ICOM/400 (DSPQHSTICM) command allows you to display the QHST log using ICOM/400. A summary form of the QHST log is displayed or printed. The DSPQHSTICM command allows you to display or print all or part of the log.

Some important fields on the command display include the following:

- **Time period for QHST output:** The period of time for which QHST entries are selected for the display or report. You must specify a beginning time and date, as well as an ending time and date.
- **Message identifier:** The message identifier for the QHST log entries that you want to display or print.
- **Exclude message ID:** The message ID that you want to exclude from QHST information. ***NONE** specifies that you do not want to exclude any Ids.
- **Severity:** The message severity level that you want to include in the display or report.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Display QHST Log Entry display.

```
                            Display QHST Log Entry
Position to message ID . .

Type options, press Enter.
  5=Display

     Message
Opt  ID       Count    Message
     CPA0702      2  ******* received by procedure . (C D I R)
     CPCA08C     14  ********** file system mounted.
     CPC1134      2  Shared pool ********** changed.
     CPC1236      5  Job //******* submitted for job schedule entry **********
     CPC1601      1  Subsystem description ********** created in **********.
     CPC1602      6  Subsystem description ********** in library ********** cha
     CPC1611      2  Job description ********** created in library **********.
     CPC1612      1  Job description ********** in library ********** changed.
     CPC2191      1  Object ********** in ********** type ******** deleted.
     CPC2602      1  Description for device ********** deleted.
     CPC2605     18  Vary on completed for device **********.
```

The Display QHST Log Entry display is a result of processing the Display QHST using ICOM/400 (DSPQHSTICM) command. Based on the parameters requested in the command, the display lists text messages associated with processing. For example, if you specified a severity of 30, all messages with a severity of 30 or higher would be selected for the display. If the display doe not contain the

information needed, you can run the command additional times with different parameter values specified.

From this display, you have one option. You can display the detail of messages by entering a **5** beside a message.

Some important fields for this display include the following:

- **Message ID:** The message ID that is associated with the text description of the message.
- **Count:** The number of times that this message identifier has appeared as a result of processing between the times specified in the DSPQHSTICM command.
- **Message:** The text of the message associated with the Message ID. Some message texts may have '********' in place of specific message data. This is because the IDs displayed are summarized, and do no show specific details. You may view the detail by typing a **5** beside a message.

Displaying Log Detail

Enter a **5** beside the message ID whose detail you want display. Press Enter to go to the Display Log Detail display.

```
3/16/03                        Display Log Detail
13:57:27                                        Position to . . . .  3/16/03

--------------------------------  3/16/03 ----------------------------------
CEE9901 received by procedure TRKCIRCY. (C D I R)
CEE9901 received by procedure TRKCIRCY. (C D I R)
```

The Display Log Detail display is a result of processing the Display QHST using ICOM/400 (DSPQHSTICM) command. Based on parameters specified in the command, the display lists text message that are in the system log. You can specify a severity level of the messages that you want included in the display.

You have reached this display by entering **Option 5** beside a message identifier. The number of messages displayed is equal to the number displayed in the **Count** field. Specific data information is displayed within each message.

If you want more information about a particular message, place the cursor on the message and press Help or F1. You are taken to the Additional Log Detail display.

```
                              Additional Log Detail

Message ID . . . . . . . . . : CPA0702       Severity . . . . . . . . : 99

Job . . . : TRKCMNT      User . . :  STEVE         Number . . . . : 021515
Date sent  . . . . . . . . . :  3/16/03      Time sent  . . . . . . :  9:25:54



Message . . . . :   CEE9901 received by procedure TRKCIRCY. (C D I R)

Cause . . . . . :   ILE Control language (CL) procedure TRKCIRCY in module
  TRKCIRCY in program TRKCIRCY in library TRAC400 detected an error at
  statement number 0000019900.  Message text for CEE9901 is: Application error.
   CPF1015 unmonitored by TRKXSRV at statement 0000000001, instruction X'0000'.
   Use F10 (if available) or the Display Job Log (DSPJOBLOG) command to see the
```

```
messages in the job log for a more complete description of what caused the
error.  If you still are unable to solve the problem, please contact your
technical support person.
```

The Additional Log Detail display gives the complete message that you requested with the Help or F1 key as well as additional message text. For more information on the fields of this display, see the **Additional ICOM/400 Log Information** display.

Chapter 8 - System Monitors

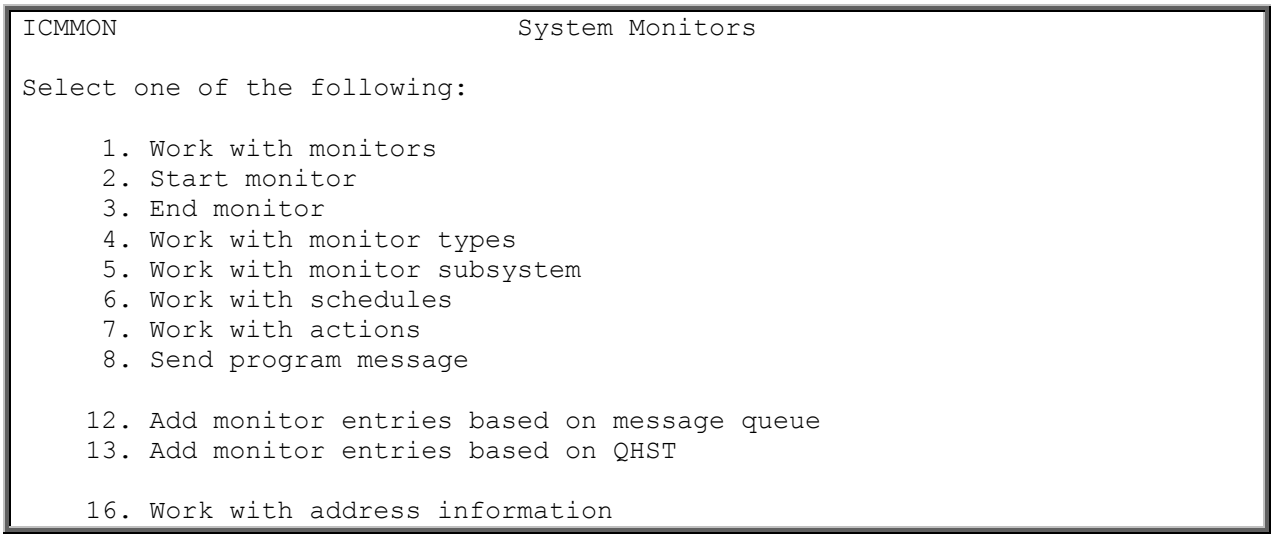
Besides messaging, the system monitors are among the most important features of ICOM/400. Their versatility allows you to monitor many functions of your AS/400, giving you more control over your system, as well as the peace of mind that your system is being monitored efficiently 24 hours a day, seven days a week, 365 days a year. With ICOM/400, you know that if anything were to go wrong with your system, you would be notified immediately of the situation.

There are several different types of monitors:

Type	Monitor name	Description
***CFGSTS**	**Configuration Status**	Allows you to monitor the status of your lines, devices and controllers
***CPU**	**CPU**	Allows you to monitor for jobs that exceed CPU capacity, as well as the system CPU capacity
***JOB**	**Job**	Allows you to monitor the length and existence of individual jobs, as well as if a job is not active
***JOBQ**	**Job Queue**	Allows you to monitor the number of jobs in your job queue
***MSGQ**	**Message Queue**	Allows you to monitor for messages in a specific message queue
***NETF**	**Network File**	Allows you to monitor for the presence of network files
***OBJSIZ**	**Object Size**	Allows you to monitor the size of a particular object
***OUTQ**	**Output Queue**	Allows you to monitor the number of spooled files in an output queue
***QHST**	**QHST**	Allows you to monitor the system history log to catch message that are not available in the message queue
***RMTDEV**	**Remote Device**	Allows you to monitor for the presence of remote devices to see if you have a network failure; also allows you to ping a server to see if it is up and running
***SBS**	**Subsystem**	Allows you to monitor the number of jobs running in a subsystem
***SPLF**	**Spooled File**	Allows you to monitor for spooled files within an output queue
***USRDFN**	**User Defined**	Allows you to monitor operations that you have defined

ICOM/400 has the capability to monitor several functions on your system. For example, you can monitor the configuration status of your system, including controllers, lines and devices. You can monitor remote devices on your network via a TCP/IP connection. You can ping your web server to see if it is up and running, as well as ping certain ports to see if a specific application is responding. You can monitor for the arrival of network files, for program failures and errors, as well as hardware errors. You can monitor for jobs that exceed your CPU capacity, as well as the total system CPU capacity. You can also set up your own monitors to perform Actions that are not accounted for by existing monitors. There are several different types of monitors.

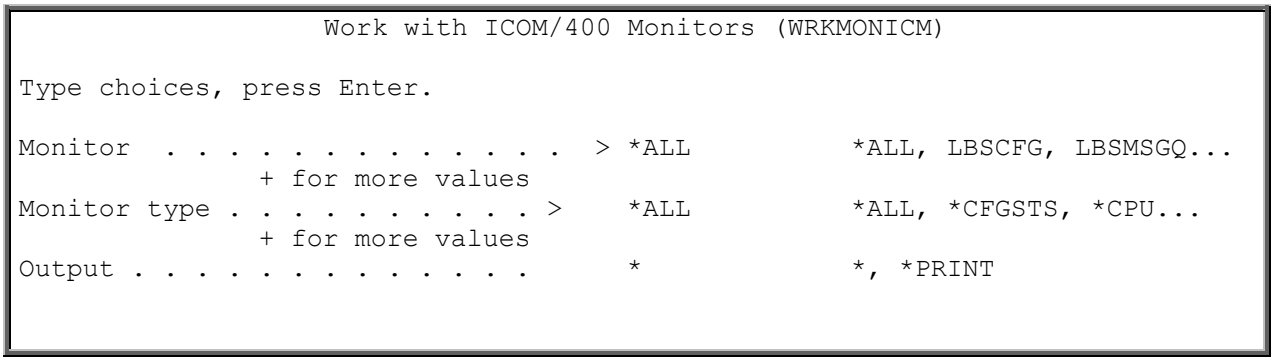
To reach the System Monitors display, enter a **6** on the command line of the ICOM/400 Main Menu. You are taken to the System Monitors menu. From this menu, you have several options. These include:



```
ICMMON                          System Monitors

Select one of the following:

     1. Work with monitors
     2. Start monitor
     3. End monitor
     4. Work with monitor types
     5. Work with monitor subsystem
     6. Work with schedules
     7. Work with actions
     8. Send program message

    12. Add monitor entries based on message queue
    13. Add monitor entries based on QHST

    16. Work with address information
```

To go to the Work with Monitors display, enter a **1** on the command line of the System Monitors menu and press Enter. You are taken to the Work with Monitors command display.

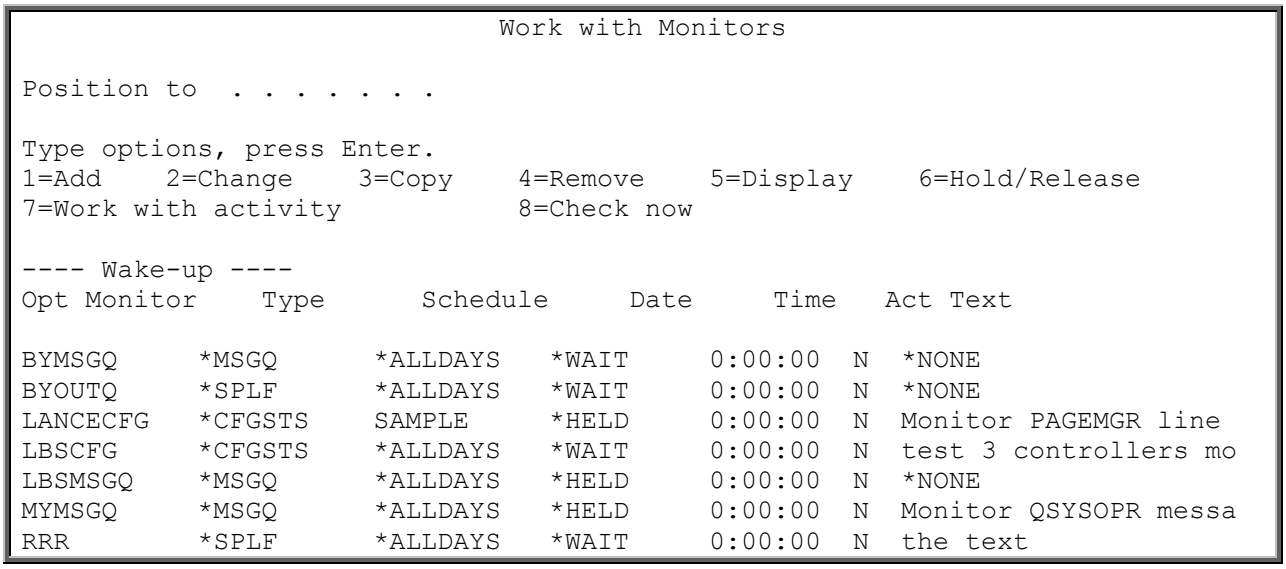
Option 1 = Work with monitors



```
                  Work with ICOM/400 Monitors (WRKMONICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Monitor  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . > *ALL          *ALL, LBSCFG, LBSMSGQ...
               + for more values
Monitor type . . . . . . . . . . . . >    *ALL          *ALL, *CFGSTS, *CPU...
               + for more values
Output . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .      *            *, *PRINT
```

This command allows you to specify which monitors you want to include on the Work with Monitors display. You can choose to list all monitors, only specific monitors, all monitor types, or only specific monitor types. You can specify more than one monitor name or monitor type by entering '+' on the parameter you want to define.

Once you have decided which monitors you want to display, press Enter to go to the Work with Monitors display.



```
                              Work with Monitors

Position to  . . . . . .

Type options, press Enter.
1=Add    2=Change    3=Copy    4=Remove    5=Display    6=Hold/Release
7=Work with activity           8=Check now

---- Wake-up ----
Opt Monitor    Type      Schedule     Date     Time   Act Text

BYMSGQ     *MSGQ      *ALLDAYS   *WAIT     0:00:00  N  *NONE
BYOUTQ     *SPLF      *ALLDAYS   *WAIT     0:00:00  N  *NONE
LANCECFG   *CFGSTS    SAMPLE     *HELD     0:00:00  N  Monitor PAGEMGR line
LBSCFG     *CFGSTS    *ALLDAYS   *WAIT     0:00:00  N  test 3 controllers mo
LBSMSGQ    *MSGQ      *ALLDAYS   *HELD     0:00:00  N  *NONE
MYMSGQ     *MSGQ      *ALLDAYS   *HELD     0:00:00  N  Monitor QSYSOPR messa
RRR        *SPLF      *ALLDAYS   *WAIT     0:00:00  N  the text
```

The Work with Monitors display shows the selected monitor(s) defined to ICOM/400 and allows you to add, change, copy, display, hold or release, and remove monitors.

Monitor entries include the name of the monitor, the type of monitor, the name of the schedule you want the monitor to follow, the last time the monitor was activated, and a text description of the monitor.

You can set up an unlimited number of monitors with varying specifications. The appropriate monitor must be active to monitor and perform Actions defined to ICOM/400.

You have several options available from this display. You can add (**1**) a new monitor, change (**2**) an existing monitor, copy (**3**) a monitor's characteristics to a new monitor, remove (**4**) a monitor, or display the characteristics of a monitor. You can hold or release (**6**) a monitor that is running or held, or you can display the activity (**7**) associated with a certain monitor. Also, if the monitor is currently inactive, you can make it check immediately for a condition (**8**). Once it checks, it will go back to being inactive.

Some important fields on this display include the following:

- **Wakeup**: The next time and date that the monitor will wake up to check for conditions that are specified for the monitor. ***HELD** indicates that the monitor is not active and needs to be released. ***WAIT** indicates that the monitor is waiting on the main monitor of its type to be active before it can wakeup. ICOM/400 will wait until the monitor is activated to calculate the next wake up time and date. **DTAQWAIT** indicates that the monitor is waiting on an entry in a data queue. This applies to a spooled file monitor only.

  Note: This applies to a spooled file monitor when there is no schedule attached to the monitor (i.e., it has a schedule of *ALLDAYS), but there is a schedule attached to an Action within a spooled file monitor.

  Note: Each time a spooled file in the output queue reaches RDY status, an entry is sent to the data queue. The spooled file monitor will only monitor spooled files that hit the output queue in ready (RDY) status. The monitor will not register files that are in a held (HLD) status. If you want to be notified about a certain spooled file, hold the file and then release it. The monitor will then notify you if that spooled file reaches the output queue.

- **Act**: Whether or not the monitor is currently active.

If you need more information on any of the fields on this display, please refer to the online help.

Before we go into the individual monitors, there are a few fields that must be defined. These fields are applicable to each one of the monitors, so instead of going over each field several times, we will discuss it once here.

The following fields are used when setting up and changing all monitors associated with ICOM/400. These include:

- **Schedule**: The name of the schedule that you would like to assign to the monitor. ***ALLDAYS** indicates that you would like the monitor to operate 24 hours a day, seven days a week. Or you can specify the name of a specific monitor that you would like to use with the monitor. Schedules are set-up in the Add Schedule display. To select from a list of existing schedules, place your cursor on the **Schedule** field and press F4 to bring up the list. You may select the schedule by entering a **1** beside the schedule you want to use. If you want to work with schedules, press F9 from this pop-up display.
- **Inactivity interval**: The amount of time (in minutes) that you would like for ICOM/400 to pause during monitoring. 15 minutes is the default amount of time. This means that while the monitor is in active status, it will check for the conditions that you have specified every 15 minutes. You can specify a number of minutes between 1 and 999 minutes. **NOTE**: The inactivity interval for your monitor can be lengthened or shortened, depending on if a user needs to use a message queue or other device that might be locked up by the monitor. For example, you might want to make the time between monitoring 60 minutes so that the device you are monitoring will not be locked up by the monitor as often as the default 15 minutes. **Note**: The inactivity interval for message queue and QHST monitors is listed in seconds.
- **Action**: The name of an Action that you want to execute in response to the monitor's specified conditions being met. An Action can be many things. Action entries can include such items as the name of the recipient you want the Action to affect, the reply that you want the Action to issue, a command to execute, or a delivery type. Actions are set up on the Work with Actions display. To select from an existing list of Actions, place your cursor on the **Action** field and press F4 to bring up the list. Place a **1** beside the Action you want to select and press Enter. If you want to work with Actions, press F9 from this pop-up display.

There are also some fields that are associated with all the Display Monitor displays. These include:

- **Next wake-up date**: The date of the monitor's next wake-up.
- **Next wake-up time:** The time of the monitor's next wake-up.
- **Last wake-up date:** The date of the monitor's previous wake-up.
- **Last wake-up time:** The time of the monitor's previous wake-up.
- **Current number of occurrences:** The current number of times that ICOM/400 has consecutively monitored the condition specified for the monitor.

Individual Monitors

Below is a listing of all current ICOM/400 monitors:

*Configuration Status (*CFGSTS)*

The configuration status monitor allows you to monitor a specific line, controller, or device on your AS/400.

A line is a physical path in data transmission. For example, you would want to monitor a line if you want to know if the line you are using goes down while transmitting data. If the status of the line matches the status of the monitor, the monitor will initiate the Action you have specified in the **Action** field. You may have set up the monitor to send an e-mail message to your home computer in the event of a line failure. You can then respond quickly without having to worry about valuable information or time.

A controller is a device that controls the operation of input/output devices (i.e., workstations) and attunes the operation of the devices with the operation of the entire system. For example, you can set up a monitor to notify you if an ASCII controller that manages your modems has gone down. If this controller goes down, you will not be able to send pages with ICOM/400. You can direct the monitor to initiate an Action that will send a message through another means of communication (i.e., e-mail, message queue, etc.)

A device can be any piece of equipment that is used with your AS/400. Devices can be workstations, printers, diskette units, tape units, or remote systems. There are several ways in which you might want to monitor a device. For example, you might want to monitor a tape unit for a failure when you are backing up your system. If the monitor detects that the tape device has failed during your back up, you can initiate an Action to back-up to another device, re-try the backup, or to simply send a message notifying you of the failure.

Adding, changing, or displaying a configuration status monitor

To add, change, or display a configuration status monitor, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Monitors display. You will also need to enter a name for your new monitor under the **Monitor** column, and ***CFGSTS** under **Type**. To change an existing monitor, enter a **2** beside the monitor you want to change, or enter a **2** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type. To display an existing monitor, enter a **5** beside the monitor you want to display, or enter a **5** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add Config Status Monitor display, the Change Config Status Monitor display, or the Display Config Status monitor, according to which option you have chosen. The displays are identical.

```
                        Add Config Status Monitor

Monitor . . . . . :       TEST

Type choices, press Enter.

Configuration description . . . . . :  _____________ Name
Type  . . . . . :  *LIN         *LIN, *CTL, *DEV
Status  . . . . . :  9 12 15      Number (1-15) F4 for list
Test  . . . . . :  *IS          *IS, *ISNOT
Schedule  . . . . . :  *ALLDAYS     Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Inactivity interval . . . . . :     15        Minutes (1-999)
Action  . . . . . :  _____________ Name, F4 for list
Number of occurrences . . . . . :     10        Number (1-99)
Text  . . . . . :  _____________ *NONE
```

Some important fields for this display include the following:

- **Configuration description**: The description name of the line, controller, or device that you want to monitor.
- **Configuration type**: The type of configuration of the description entered in the **Configuration description** field. ***LIN** indicates that the configuration is a communication line. ***CTL** indicates that the configuration is a controller. ***DEV** indicates that the configuration is a device.
- **Status**: The configuration status that you would like the configuration status monitor to check. This value can range from 1 to 15. For a detailed listing of statuses, please refer to the ICOM/400 online help, or press F4 for a list. **NOTE**: You may specify up to three statuses for the configuration status monitor to monitor.
- **Test**: Whether the specified configuration is the specified configuration status that is specified in the **Status** field. ***IS** indicates that the line, controller, or device is currently in the status specified. ***ISNOT** indicates that the line, controller or device is not currently in the status specified.
- **Number of occurrences**: The number of times the specified configuration can satisfy the conditions defined in the **Status** and **Test** parameters before it initiates the Action specified. The first time the condition is met, ICOM/400 will initiate the specified Action, then again after the number of occurrences is met. The number of occurrences count will then be reset and the cycle will begin again.

*CPU Monitor (*CPU)*

The CPU monitor allows you to monitor for jobs on your AS/400 that have exceeded the allotted CPU capacity percentage. This monitor also allows you to monitor the CPU percentage capacity for the entire system.

You can choose to monitor a specific job for exceeding CPU capacity, or any job on the system (***ANY**) for exceeding this capacity. The CPU capacity allowed for a job is defined in the **CPU% limit** field. You can specify what percentage of the system's CPU capacity you do not want the job to exceed in the **Based on system CPU%** field that must be exceeded before the Action is initiated. This is only used with a specific job, generic jobs, or *ANY.

If you wish to monitor the entire system for exceeding the CPU capacity, specify ***SYSTEM** in the **Job** field. The *SYSTEM CPU usage is compared with the percentage specified in the **CPU% limit** field. It is not compared to the **Based on system CPU%** field.

If the job or system exceeds the allotted capacity, you may choose to initiate an Action for the monitor to perform.

Adding, changing, or displaying a CPU monitor

To add, change, or display a CPU monitor, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Monitors display. You will also need to enter a name for your new monitor under the **Monitor** column, and ***CPU** under **Type**. To change an existing monitor, enter a **2** beside the monitor you want to change, or enter a **2** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type. To display an existing monitor, enter a **5** beside the monitor you want to display, or enter a **5** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add CPU Monitor display, the Change CPU Monitor display, or the Display CPU monitor, according to which option you have chosen. The displays are identical.

```
                              Add CPU Monitor

Monitor . . . . . :   TEST

Type choices, press Enter.

Job . . . . . _____________  Name, generic*, *ANY ...
Subsystem . . . . . *ANY           Name, *ANY
CPU% limit  . . . . . 80           Number (1-90)
Based on system CPU%  . . . . . 10    Number (0-99)
Schedule  . . . . . *ALLDAYS       Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Inactivity interval . . . . . 60   Minute (1-999)
Action  . . . . . _____________    Name, F4 for list
Text  . . . . . *NONE
```

Some important fields for these displays include:

- **Job**: The job or jobs that you want to monitor for exceeding CPU percentage capacity. ***ANY** indicates that you want to monitor any job for exceeding the capacity. ***SYSTEM** indicates that you want to monitor the entire system for exceeding the specified capacity. You can also specify the name of a specific job, or a generic job name.
- **CPU% limit**: The processing capacity percentage of the CPU for the job(s) specified in the **Job** field. This percentage can range from 1 to 90. If this limit is reached, the monitor will initiate the Action you have specified. This value is also used when ***SYSTEM** is specified in the **Job** field. This value is checked before the percentage value in the **Based on system CPU%** field.
- **Based on system CPU%**: The percentage of system CPU capacity that must be exceeded before the Action you have specified is initiated. **NOTE**: This field is only used when ***ANY**, or a specific or generic job name is specified in the **Job** field. If ***SYSTEM** is specified, the value in the **CPU% limit** field is used.

*Job Monitor (*JOB)*

A job monitor allows you to monitor the existence and length of individual jobs, as well as monitor if a job is active or not, and if a job has a certain status.

This can be a very important monitor within ICOM/400. Many times you have a job that is crucial to your business's functioning, such as a payroll job, or a job that fills customer orders. What if the job was to end abnormally, or worse, not run at all? With ICOM/400, you can set up a monitor to let you know when there is a problem with a job.

The job monitor can also check to see if the job has been running longer than it is scheduled to run. This could indicate a problem with the proper functioning of the job.

Adding, Changing, or Displaying a Job Monitor

To add, change, or display a job monitor, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Monitors display. You will also need to enter a name for your new monitor under the **Monitor** column, and ***JOB** under **Type**. To change an existing monitor, enter a **2** beside the monitor you want to change, or enter a **2** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type. To display an existing monitor, enter a **5** beside the monitor you want to display, or enter a **5** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add Job Monitor display, the Change Job Monitor display, or the Display Job monitor, according to which option you have chosen. The displays are identical.

```
                              Add Job Monitor

Monitor . . . . . . . . . . . . . :   TEST

Type choices, press Enter.

Job Name  . . . . . . . . . . . . .   __________      Name, *ALL
User  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *ANY            Name, *ANY
Subsystem . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *ANY            Name, *ANY
Check if ran  . . . . . . . . . . .   *YES            *YES, *NO
Maximum run time  . . . . . . . . .   *NOMAX          Minutes (1-999), *NOMAX
Check if not active . . . . . . . .   *NO             *NO, *YES
Job status  . . . . . . . . . . . .   ____ ____ ____  MSGW, LCKW, F4
Schedule  . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *ALLDAYS        Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Inactivity interval . . . . . . . .    15             Minutes (1-999)
Action  . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   __________      Name, F4 for list
Text  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *NONE
```

Some important fields for the job monitor display includes the following:

- **Job name**: The name of the job you want to monitor
- **User**: The name of the user that is associated with the job. ***ANY** indicates that any user can be associated with this job.
- **Subsystem**: The name of the subsystem where the job resides. ***ANY** indicates that the job can be associated with any subsystem.
- **Check if ran**: The monitor will check to see if the job has ran. ***YES** indicates that the monitor is to check to see if the job has run.
- **Maximum run time**: The maximum number of minutes that the job is allowed to run. ***NOMAX** indicates that the job will be allowed to run indefinitely.
- **Check if not active**: You want to be notified if the job is not active.
- **Job status**: You want to be notified if the job has any of the three statuses listed.

*Job Queue (*JOBQ)*

The job queue monitor allows you to monitor the number of jobs that reside in your job queue.

With this monitor, you can oversee the batch jobs that are waiting to be processed on your system. You can specify the upper limit on the number of jobs that will be allowed on your job queue. If this number is exceeded, ICOM/400 will initiate the Action you have specified.

Adding, Changing, or Displaying a Job Queue Monitor

To add, change, or display a job queue monitor, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Monitors display. You will also need to enter a name for your new monitor under the **Monitor** column, and ***JOBQ** under **Type**. To change an existing monitor, enter a **2** beside the monitor you want to change, or enter a **2** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type. To display an existing monitor, enter a **5** beside the monitor you want to display, or enter a **5** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add Job Queue Monitor display, the Change Job Queue Monitor display, or the Display Job Queue monitor, according to which option you have chosen. The displays are identical.

```
                          Add Job Queue Monitor

Monitor . . . . . :   TEST

Type choices, press Enter.

Job queue . . . . . _____________     Name
  Library . . . . . *LIBL             Name, *LIBL
Job limit . . . . . _____________     Number (1-99)
Schedule  . . . . . *ALLDAYS          Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Inactivity interval . . . . . 15      Minutes (1-999)
Action  . . . . . _____________       Name, F4 for list
Number of occurrences . . . . . 10    Number (1-99)
Text  . . . . . *NONE
```

Some important fields for these displays include:

- **Job queue**: The job queue that want to monitor for batch jobs.
- **Library**: The library that contains the job queue.
- **Job limit**: The upper limit of the number of jobs (from 1 to 999) that can be placed on the specified job queue. When this number is reached the first time, ICOM/400 will initiate the specified Action. The Action will be initiated again when the number of occurrences has been met. The number of occurrences count is then reset to zero, and the cycle is repeated.

*Message Queue (*MSGQ)*

A message queue monitor allows you to monitor for the presence of messages in a specific message queue. Messages are sent to the message queue via a job you run, or a scheduled job run by a job scheduler. If the message meets the job specifications of the sequence number, then the message level text specified for that sequence number is sent the specified recipient(s) or group of recipients.

You may add an unlimited number of message IDs to the monitor.

Adding a message queue monitor

To add a message queue monitor, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Monitors display. You will also need to enter a name for your new monitor under the **Monitor** column, and ***MSGQ** under **Type**.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add Message Queue Monitor display. On this display, you will need to enter the name of the message queue and library.

```
                       Add Message Queue Monitor

 Monitor . . . . . :   MSGQ

 Type choices, press Enter.

 Message queue . . . . . _______________ Name
   Library . . . . . *LIBL             Name, *LIBL
 Inactivity interval . . . . . 60      Seconds (1-999)
 Text  . . . . . *NONE
```

Changing a message queue monitor

Once you have added a message queue monitor, you must add the message queue entries. Enter a 2 beside the monitor you want to change and press Enter. You are taken to Change Message Queue Monitor display.

```
                        Change Message Queue Monitor

Monitor . . . . . :   BYMSGQ

Message queue . . . . . .   BYMSGQ         Name
  Library . . . . . .         BYLIB        Name, *LIBL
Inactivity interval . . . . . .   15         Seconds (1-999)
Text  . . . . . .   *NONE
                                      Position to  . . . . .
Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add  2=Change  3=Copy  4=Remove  5=Display  7=Change compare data

Opt Seq  Msg ID  MsgType Sev Job name   Schedule   Action     Skip  Frc  I/E
 _  ___
```

From this display you can add, change, copy, remove, or display a message queue entry, as well as change the compare data for an entry.

Enter **1** and a sequence number for the message ID you want to add. Press Enter, and you are taken to the Add Message Queue Monitor Entry display.

```
                      Add Message Queue Monitor Entry

Monitor . . . . . :   BYMSGQ

Type choices, press Enter.

Sequence  . . . . . .   ____________ Number, 1-999
Schedule  . . . . . .   *ALLDAYS     Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Severity limit  . . . . . .   40           Number, 00-99
Job name  . . . . . .   *ALL         Name, generic*, *ALL
User  . . . . . .   *ALL         Name, generic*, *ALL
Program . . . . . .   *ALL         Name, generic*, *ALL
Message ID  . . . . . .   *ALL         Name, generic*, *ALL
Message type  . . . . . .   *ALL         Type, *ALL
Action  . . . . . .   ____________ Name, *NONE, F4 for list
Include/Exclude . . . . . .   *INC         *INC, *EXC
Skip to sequence  . . . . . .   *NEXT        1-999, *END, *NEXT
Force action  . . . . . .   *NO          *NO, *YES
Base on command response  . . . . .   *NO          *NO, *YES
```

Some important fields on this display include:

- **Severity limit**: The lowest level message severity that, when associated with a message that is sent to a message queue, is a candidate to initiate an Action. Before initiating an Action, all other message queue monitor entry requirements must be met. For example, a severity limit of 40 means that any message with a severity level of 40 or higher is a candidate to initiate an Action. A message with a severity level of less than 40 would not be a candidate. The limit can range from 00 to 99.
- **Job name**: The name of the job that, when associated with a message sent to the message queue, will be a candidate to initiate an Action. You can specify the name of a specific job, or a generic job name. ***ALL** indicates that any job that sends a message to a message queue or

whose job name is associated with a message sent to a message queue is a candidate to initiate an Action.

- **User**: The user name that is a candidate to initiate an Action. You can specify a specific user or a generic user name. ***ALL** indicates that any user that sends a message to a message queue is a candidate to initiate an Action.
- **Program**: The program that is a candidate to initiate an Action. You an specify a specific program name or a generic program name. ***ALL** indicates that any program that sends a message to a message queue is a candidate to initiate an Action.
- **Message ID**: The ID of the message that, when received by the message queue, will initiate an Action. You can specify a specific message ID or a generic one. ***ALL** indicates that any message ID sent to the message queue is a candidate to initiate the Action.
- **Message type**: The type of message that will be a candidate to initiate an Action. The following message types are possible:
  - ***INFO**: Informational message
  - ***INQ**: Inquiry message
  - ***COMP**: Completion message. A completion message indicates that a task has been performed successfully.
  - ***DIAG**: Diagnostic message. Diagnostic messages provide information about error detected. ***NOTIFY**: Notification exception message. A notification message describes a condition for which corrective action must be taken before the sending program can resume and receive the reply message from its message queue.
  - ***ESCAPE**: Escape message. An error message describes an irrevocable error condition. The sending program does not continue to run.
  - ***RQS**: Request message. A request message allows request data received from device files to pass from this program to another program or procedure. An immediate message must be sued to send the request.
  - ***STATUS**: Status message. A status message describes the status of work performed by the sending program.
  - ***REPLY**: Reply message. A reply message is a message that is a response to a received inquiry or notification message.
- **Include/exclude**: Whether the message should be included (***INC**) or excluded (***EXC**) as a candidate to initiate an Action.
- **Skip to sequence**: Whether ICOM/400 should continue processing the next sequence in the list of message queue entries (***NEXT**), discontinue after the current sequence number (***END**), or skip to a specific sequence number.
- **Force action:** Used to designate a message queue monitor entry or entries that should be qualified for initiating an Action before the remaining entries. The order in which ICOM/400 qualifies entries is by sequence number within entries with **Force action *YES**, then exclusion types, and lastly inclusion types.

  This field could be useful in the event that you are monitoring a message queue and have a message queue monitor entry which excludes all job completion messages. However, when your weekly payroll job, WRKPAYRL, completes, you would like to begin your backups. You could define a message queue monitor entry to monitor for the completion message for job WRKPAYRL with an associated Action that issues a command to begin backups. By specifying **Force Action *YES**, the completion message for this specific job will initiate the Action and not be excluded as will the remaining job completion messages.

  Another facet of this parameter is the ability to bypass the notification portion of the Action initiated. Actions are processed as two parts, the command sequence and the notification portion. If, during the command sequence portion of the action, a message ICM7777 is passed pack to ICOM/400, the notification portion will be bypassed. For example, when the weekly payroll job, WRKPAYRL, completes, the weekly backup should begin, however you only wish to receive a pager message that WRKPAYRL completed if it is prior to 10:00. The Action would be defined to notify you with a pager message. Within the command portion of the Action, you would have a sequence that submits the backups, and then a sequence that calls a program that retrieves the time, and if it is greater than 10:00, sends a message ICM7777. In that

event, ICOM/400 will bypass the notification portion of the Action, and no pager message will be sent.

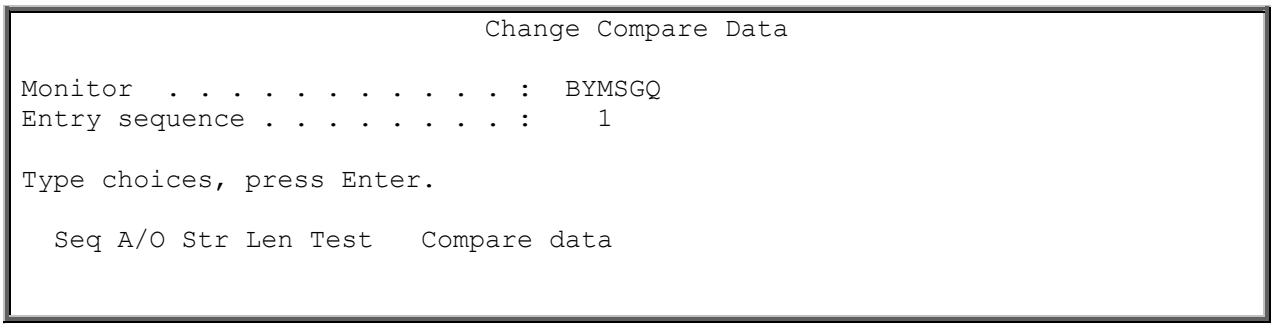
- **Base on command response**: This field tells ICOM/400 to qualify the processing of the notification process of the specified Action upon the receipt of a message sent back to ICOM/400 as the result of processing the command portion of the specified Action. Actions are processed in two portions, the command sequence portion and the notification portion. If during the command sequence portion, a message ICM3333 is passed back to ICOM/400, the notification portion of the specified entry will be processed, followed by the qualification of any remaining message queue monitor entries.

  For example, you may want to notify a recipient by sending a message to their message queue, but only if the user is currently signed on. This could be accomplished by defining an Action to notify a recipient with a message to their message queue and defining a command sequence that would call a program that determines if the recipient is signed on to the system. If the recipient is signed on, sending a ICM3333 message will cause the notification portion of the Action to be processed.

  ***NO** indicates that the notification portion of the specified Action is not conditioned upon the receipt of a message. ***YES** indicates that the notification portion of the Action is conditioned upon the receipt of message ICM3333.

Changing Compare Data

Once you have added your message queue monitor entry(s), you can change the compare data for an entry. Type **7** beside the entry whose compare data you want to change and press Enter. You are taken to the Change Compare Data display.



The Change Compare Data display allows you to change the criteria used by ICOM/400 to determine which messages are monitored for in message queues or QHST and, in turn, the subsequent Action initiated by the message.

The Change Compare Data display works in conjunction with the **Message ID** field on the Monitor entry display. You must know what data with the message ID(s) you want to use as criteria to initiate an Action. For example, message ID CPI5935 states: "Controller &1 failed. Automatic Recovery started," whereas &1 is the message data. There are many different controllers that can fail. But, for instance, you only want to monitor for controller ETHCTL. If controller ETHCTL fails, you want to receive a pager message (or any other defined Action). You must define the compare message data on this display in order to distinguish between controllers.

Some important fields on this display include:

- **Seq**: The sequence in which you would like ICOM/400 to consider the compare data for each message. This number can range from 1 to 999.
- **And/Or**: Whether ICOM/400 should consider this compare data sequence in combination with other sequences (**AND**) or as an alternative to other sequences (**OR**).

- **Starting position**: The position of the message data part of the message that you would like for ICOM/400 to begin comparing data.

  NOTE: This is the starting position of the message data, not the message text. For example, if you had a message: "Object &1 in &2 type &3 deleted.", you would specify position 1 for the object name (&1). This field works in conjunction with the Length field. If the length of &1 is 10 characters and you wanted to compare &2, you would specify 11 as the starting position for &2.

- **Length**: The length of characters in the message that you would like for ICOM/400 to use for comparing data.

  NOTE: If you do not know the length of the message data, you can find it by entering WRKMSGD on a command line. Press F4 to prompt the command. Enter the name of the message identifier in the space provided (or *FIRST if you want to display multiple identifiers). In Message file, enter the name of the message file (i.e. ICMMSGF in library ICOM400 for ICOM/400). Press Enter to go to the Work with Message Descriptions display. Place a 5 beside the message ID whose length you want to display and press Enter. On the Select Message Details to Display screen, place a 2 in the space provided. Press Enter to go to the Display Field Data screen. Under the Length column is the length of the message data variable.

- **Test**: Whether you want ICOM/400 to monitor for message data that is equal to the compare data or unequal to the compare data. ***EQ** indicates that the compare data must equal the specified message data. ***NE** indicates that the compare data must not equal the specified message data.
- **Compare data**: The data that you want ICOM/400 to use to compare with message data in the text of a message identifier.

NOTE: To duplicate an entry, press F16 on an existing entry.

For example, You want to know when an important job you are running has finished processing. So, you set up a message queue monitor entry to monitor for a certain message ID (for instance CPFnnnn, "Job &1/&2 ended successfully). Since you do not want to know when every job that is processing ends, you must specify which job (or message data within the message text of a certain message ID) you want to monitor.

Beside the monitor entry, enter a 7 to go to the Change Compare Data display. Specify a sequence number for your first compare data entry. Under STR, enter a 1 as the starting position. You will need to enter the length of the message data under Len. You must specify whether you want your compare data to be equal to the data in the message or unequal to the message data. Here, you want it to be equal. Finally, you need to specify the compare data for the message ID. In this case, the data should be the name of the job you are monitoring.

Displaying a message queue monitor

To display a message queue monitor, type a **5** beside the monitor you want to display and press Enter. You are taken to the Display Message Queue Monitor display. Here, you may display monitor entries by entering a **5** beside an entry.

*Network File (*NETF)*

The Network file monitor allows you to monitor for the presence of network files. A network file is a file (either a physical file or a save file) sent by one user to one or more other users.

Adding, changing, or displaying a network file monitor

To add, change, or display a network file monitor, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Monitors display. You will also need to enter a name for your new monitor under the **Monitor** column, and ***NETF** under **Type**. To change an existing monitor, enter a **2** beside the monitor you want to change, or enter a **2** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type. To display an existing monitor, enter a **5** beside the monitor you want to display, or enter a **5** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add Network File Monitor display, the Change Network File Monitor display, or the Display Network File monitor, according to which option you have chosen. The displays are identical.

```
                          Change Network File Monitor

Monitor . . . . . :     SAMPLE

Type changes, press Enter.

File  . . . . . .   IMPORTANT      Name, generic*, *ALL
Member  . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, generic*, *ALL
To user ID  . . . . . .   *ALL      Name, *ALL
From user ID:
  User ID . . . . . .   *ALL        Name, *ALL
  Address . . . . . .   *ALL        Name, *ALL
Network file type . . . . . .   *ALL  *ALL, *DTA, *SRC, *SAVF...
Schedule  . . . . . .   SAMPLE      Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Inactivity interval . . . . . .    15  Minutes (1-999)
Action  . . . . . .   SAMPLE       Name, F4 for list
Text  . . . . . .   Monitor for IMPORTANT network file
```

Some important fields on this display include the following:

- **File**: The name of the network file for which you are monitoring. You can monitor for all files (***ALL**), a generic file name, or specific file.
- **Member**: The name of a member in the network file that you want to monitor. You can monitor all members in the file (***ALL**), a generic member name, or a specific member.
- **To user ID**: The name of the user ID to whom the network file is being sent. You can specify any user on the local system that is to receive a network file (***ALL**), or a specific user ID.
- **From user ID**: The name of the user ID from whom the network file is being sent. You can specify any user on the remote system that sends a network file (***ALL**), or a specific user ID.
- **Address**: The address of the user ID from whom the network file is sent. You can specify any address on the remote system that sends a network file (***ALL**), or a specific address.
- **Network file type**: The type of network file that is being sent. You can specify all file types (***ALL**) or one of the files types listed below:
  - ***DTA**: Data file
  - ***JOB**: Job file
  - ***SAVF**: Save file
  - ***SRC**: Source file

*Object Size (*OBJSIZ)*

The object size monitor allows you to monitor the size of a particular object. If the object that you are monitoring exceeds the size limit you have specified, the specified Action is initiated.

Adding, changing, or displaying an object size monitor

To add, change, or display an object size monitor, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Monitors display. You will also need to enter a name for your new monitor under the **Monitor** column, and ***OBJSIZ** under **Type**. To change an existing monitor, enter a **2** beside the monitor you want to change, or enter a **2** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name

and monitor type. To display an existing monitor, enter a **5** beside the monitor you want to display, or enter a **5** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add Object Size Monitor display, the Change Object Size Monitor display, or the Display Object Size Monitor, according to which option you have chosen. The displays are identical.

```
                        Change Object Size Monitor

Monitor . . . . . :   SAMPLE

Type changes, press Enter.

Object  . . . . . .   DATALIB        Name, generic*, *ALL
  Library . . . . . .   *LIBL        Name, *LIBL
Object type . . . . .   *LIB         *LIB, *FILE, *JRNRCV
Size limit  . . . . .   1000.00000   Megabytes
Schedule  . . . . . .   SAMPLE       Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Inactivity interval .   60           Minutes (1-999)
Action  . . . . . .   SAMPLE         Name, F4 for list
Number of occurrences   1            Number (1-99)
Text  . . . . . .   Monitor size of DATALIB library
```

Some important fields for this display include the following:

- **Object**: The name of the object that you wish to monitor. You can monitor all objects in the library you have specified (***ALL**), a generic object name, or a specific object.
- **Library**: The name of the library that contains the object(s) you want to monitor or ***LIBL** when the object type is ***LIB**.
- **Object type**: The type of object that you want to monitor. You can monitor for a file (***FILE**), a library (***LIB**), or a journal receiver (***JRNRCV**)
- **Size limit**: The upper limit of the size of the object. The size is specified in megabytes.

*Output Queue (*OUTQ)*

The output queue monitor allows you to monitor the number of spooled files in a particular output queue. If the number of spooled files reaches the **Spooled file limit**, the Action specified for the monitor is initiated.

Adding, changing, or displaying an output queue monitor

To add, change, or display an output queue monitor, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Monitors display. You will also need to enter a name for your new monitor under the **Monitor** column, and ***OUTQ** under **Type**. To change an existing monitor, enter a **2** beside the monitor you want to change, or enter a **2** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type. To display an existing monitor, enter a **5** beside the monitor you want to display, or enter a **5** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add Output Queue Monitor display, the Change Output Queue Monitor display, or the Display Output Queue Monitor, according to which option you have chosen. The displays are identical.

```
                        Change Output Queue Monitor

Monitor . . . . . :   SAMPLE

Type changes, press Enter.

Output queue  . . . . . .   QPRINT         Name
  Library . . . . . .         *LIBL         Name, *LIBL
Spooled file limit  . . . . .   50          Number (1-999)
Schedule  . . . . . .   SAMPLE         Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Inactivity interval . . . . .   15          Minutes (1-999)
Action  . . . . . .   SAMPLE         Name, F4 for list
Number of occurrences . . . . .   10          Number (1-99)
Text  . . . . . .   Monitor QPRINT for 50+ spooled files
```

Some important fields for this display include the following:

- **Output queue**: The output queue that you want to monitor.
- **Library**: The library that contains the output queue that you are monitoring.
- **Spooled file limit**: The upper limit of the number of spooled files in the output queue.

*QHST (*QHST)*

The QHST monitor allows you to monitor the system history log to catch messages that are not available in the message queue. These are messages that are generated as a result of activity on your system.

Adding a QHST monitor

To add a QHST monitor, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Monitors display. You will also need to enter a name for your new monitor under the **Monitor** column, and ***QHST** under **Type**.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add QHST Monitor display. On this display, you will need to enter the inactivity interval for the QHST monitor.

```
                            Add QHST Monitor

Monitor . . . . . :   QHST

Type choices, press Enter.

Inactivity interval . . . . .   60          Seconds (1-999)
Text  . . . . . .   *NONE
```

Changing a QHST monitor

Once you have added a QHST monitor, you must add the QHST entries. Enter a 2 beside the monitor you want to change and press Enter. You are taken to Change QHST Monitor display.

```
                          Change QHST Monitor

Monitor . . . . . :   SAMPLE

Inactivity interval . . . . . .    60            Seconds (1-999)
Text  . . . . . .   Monitor QHST
                                        Position to  . . . . .
Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add  2=Change  3=Copy  4=Remove  5=Display  7=Change compare data

Opt Seq  Msg ID  MsgType Sev Job name   Schedule   Action     Skip  Frc  I/E

    010  *ALL    *REPLY      *ALL       *ALLDAYS   *NONE      *END  *NO  *EXC
    020  *ALL    *ALL     70 *ALL       SAMPLE     SAMPLE     *NEXT *NO  *INC
    030  *ALL    *INQ        *ALL       SAMPLE     SAMPLE     *NEXT *NO  *INC
    040  CPF0907 *ALL        *ALL       SAMPLE     SAMPLE     *NEXT *NO  *INC
    050  CPF1816 *ALL        *ALL       SAMPLE     SAMPLE     *NEXT *NO  *INC
    060  CPF1817 *ALL        *ALL       SAMPLE     SAMPLE     *NEXT *NO  *INC
    070  *ALL    *ALL        PMR*       *ALLDAYS   *NONE      *END  *NO  *EXC
    080  *ALL    *ALL        PAGE*      *ALLDAYS   *NONE      *END  *NO  *EXC
```

From this display you can add, change, copy, remove, or display a message queue entry, as well as change the compare data for an entry.

Enter **1** and a sequence number for the message ID you want to add. Press Enter, and you are taken to the Add Message Queue Monitor Entry display.

```
                        Add QHST Queue Monitor Entry

Monitor . . . . . :   SAMPLE

Type choices, press Enter.

Sequence  . . . . . .                  Number, 001-999
Schedule  . . . . . .   *ALLDAYS       Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Severity limit  . . . .   40           Number, 00-99
Job name  . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, generic*, *ALL
User  . . . . . .   *ALL              Name, generic*, *ALL
Message ID  . . . . . .   *ALL        Name, generic*, *ALL
Message type  . . . . . .   *ALL       Type, *ALL
Action  . . . . . .                    Name, *NONE, F4 for list
Include/Exclude . . . . . .   *INC      *INC, *EXC
Skip to sequence  . . . . . .   *NEXT   001-999, *END, *NEXT
Force action  . . . . . .   *NO        *NO, *YES
Base on command response  . . . . .   *NO   *NO, *YES
```

For more information on the fields on this display, refer to Add Message Queue Monitor Entry. The fields are the same.

You may also change the compare data for a message entry. To do this, enter a **7** beside the entry and press Enter. You are taken to the Change Compare Data display. For more information on this display, see the information regarding the message queue monitor.

Displaying a QHST monitor

To display a QHST monitor, type a **5** beside the monitor you want to display and press Enter. You are taken to the Display QHST Monitor display. Here, you may display monitor entries by entering a **5** beside an entry.

*Remote Device (*RMTDEV)*

The remote device monitor allows you to monitor for the presence of remote devices to see if you have a network failure; it also allows you to ping a server to make sure it is up and running. You can specify the TCP/IP address of your remote device, as well as a specific port number to monitor.

Adding, changing, or displaying a remote device monitor

To add, change, or display a remote device monitor, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Monitors display. You will also need to enter a name for your new monitor under the **Monitor** column, and ***RMTDEV** under **Type**. To change an existing monitor, enter a **2** beside the monitor you want to change, or enter a **2** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type. To display an existing monitor, enter a **5** beside the monitor you want to display, or enter a **5** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add Remote Device Monitor display, the Change Remote Device Monitor display, or the Display Remote Device Monitor, according to which option you have chosen. The displays are identical.

```
                        Change Remote Device Monitor

Monitor . . . . . . . . . . . . . :   SAMPLE

Type changes, press Enter.

TCP/IP address  . . . . . . . . . .   205.219.23.2

Port number . . . . . . . . . . . .   23              *PING, 1-65535
Schedule  . . . . . . . . . . . . .   SAMPLE          Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Inactivity interval . . . . . . . .    15             Minutes (1-999)
Action  . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   SSTEST          Name, F4 for list
Number of occurrences . . . . . . .    1              Number (1-99)
Text  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   Monitor remote PC
```

Some important fields for this display include the following:

- **TCP/IP address**: The TCP/IP address of the remote device you want to monitor.
- **Port number**: The number of the port on the device on which your application is running. ICOM/400 will check the port to make sure your application is running. ***PING** indicates that you want to make sure that the entire device is communicating on the network.

*Spooled File (*SPLF)*

The spooled file monitor allows you to monitor for specific spooled file information within an output queue. It should not confused with the output queue monitor, which monitors for the number of spooled files in the queue. The spooled file monitor monitors for the existence of specific spooled files in the queue.

Adding a spooled file monitor

To add a spooled file monitor, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Monitors display. You will also need to enter a name for your new monitor under the **Monitor** column, and ***SPLF** under **Type**.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add Spooled File Monitor display. On this display, you must enter the output queue and library that you want to monitor.

```
                          Add Spooled File Monitor

Monitor . . . . . . . . . . . . . :   SPLF

Type choices, press Enter.

Output queue  . . . . . . . . . . .                  Name
  Library . . . . . . . . . . . . .     *LIBL        Name, *LIBL
Text  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *NONE
```

Some important fields on this display include the following:

- **Output queue**: The output queue that you want to monitor.
- **Library**: The library that contains the output queue.

Changing a spooled file monitor

Once you have added your spooled file monitor, you must add spooled file entries to it. Type **2** beside the monitor you want to change and press Enter. You are taken to the Work with Spooled File Entries display.

```
                       Work with Spooled File Entries

Monitor . . . . . . . . . . . . . :   BYOUTQ
Output queue  . . . . . . . . . . .   BYOUTQ
  Library . . . . . . . . . . . . .     BYLIB
Text  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *NONE

                                      Position to  . . . . .
Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add  2=Work with spooled file actions  3=Copy  4=Remove  5=Display

    Spooled     Program                Remove
Opt  File        Name       User Data   File  Text

    *ALL        *ALL        *ALL        *NO   *NONE
```

From this display, you can add, copy, remove and display spooled file entries, as well as work with spooled file actions. To add an entry, type a **1** on the first line of the **Opt** column and press Enter. You are taken to the Add Spooled File Entry display.

```
                        Add Spooled File Entry

Monitor . . . . . :   BYOUTQ
Output queue  . . . . . :   BYOUTQ
  Library . . . . . :     BYLIB

Type choices, press Enter.

Spooled file  . . . . . .   *ALL         Name, *ALL
Program name  . . . . . .   *ALL         Name, *ALL, *NONE
User data . . . . . .   *ALL         Name, *ALL, *NONE
Address information (SNDSPLF) . . .   *NONE        Name, *NONE, F4 for list
Remove spooled file . . . . . .   *NO          *NO, *YES
Text  . . . . . .   *NONE
```

Some important files on this display include the following:

- **Spooled file**: The spooled file for which you are monitoring. You can monitor for all spooled files in the output queue (***ALL**), or for a specific spooled file.
- **Program name**: The name of the program that generates the spooled file. You can monitor for all program names (***ALL**), none (***NONE**), or for a specific program.
- **User data**: The user data associated with a spooled file. ***ALL** indicates that all spooled files are eligible for selection during the spooled file process, regardless of the contents of the user data. ***NONE** indicates that the spooled file user data will be blank.
- **Address information (SNDSPLF)**: The name of the Address Information that will be used to determine the location of the email address within the spooled file. This allows a spooled file to be split and sent to different email addresses. An exit program can also be used to retrieve an email address based on information found in the spooled file. For instance, an account number may be on each page of the spooled file and passed to the exit program which in turn will pass back the email address for that account. This field is not used in conjunction with the Action list. The SNDSPLFICM command is used if this field is specified.
- **Remove spooled file**: Whether the original spooled file for the spooled file entry should be removed after any action is completed.

Once you have entered the spooled file entry, you can work with the Actions that will be initiated by the spooled file monitor. Type **2** beside an entry and press Enter. You are taken to the Work with Spooled File Actions display.

```
                      Work with Spooled File Actions

Monitor . . . . . :   BYOUTQ
Spooled file  . . . . . :   *ALL
Program name  . . . . . :   *ALL
User data . . . . . :   *ALL
Address information (SNDSPLF) . . .   *NONE        Name, *NONE, F4 for list
Remove spooled file . . . . . .   *NO          *NO, *YES
Text  . . . . . .   *NONE

                                    Position to  . . . . .
Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add  2=Change  3=Copy  4=Remove  5=Display

Opt Action       Schedule

    SPLFACTION   *ALLDAYS
```

From this display, you can add, change, copy, display or remove spooled file actions. To add a spooled file action, type a **1** in the first line of the **Opt** column and press Enter. You are taken to the Add Spooled File Action display.

```
                          Add Spooled File Action

Monitor . . . . . :   BYOUTQ
Spooled file  . . . . . :   *ALL
Program name  . . . . . :   *ALL
User data . . . . . :   *ALL

Type choices, press Enter.

Action  . . . . . .               Name, F4 for list
Schedule  . . . . . .   *ALLDAYS     Name, F4 for list
```

On this display, you can specify the Action for the spooled file entry, as well as the schedule for the entry. Press Enter to add the entry and return to the Spooled File Entries display.

NOTE: If you wish to send your spooled file as a fax, the Action you utilize for your spooled file entry must have SNDSPLFICM as a command in the command list. When you set up your Action, specify the following as an entry in your command list:

SNDSPLFICM SPLF(*your spooled file***) JOB(*) SPLNBR(*LAST) MSG('Attached is your spooled file.') DVYTYP(*FAX) FAX('555-1212' John Doe)**

On the Action itself, you must specify ***NONE** in the **Recipient/Group** field. This lets ICOM/400 know that you are using a command to determine the recipient.

*Subsystem (*SBS)*

A subsystem monitor allows you to specify the subsystem you want to monitor as well as a limit on the number of jobs and number of occurrences for each job. This monitor behaves similarly to a job queue monitor, but monitors the number of jobs that are active in your subsystem, rather than the number of jobs in the job queue. You can specify the upper limit on the number of jobs that you will allow to run in your subsystem. If that number is exceeded, ICOM/400 will initiate the Action you have specified.

Adding, Changing, or Displaying a Subsystem Monitor

To add a subsystem monitor, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Monitors display. You will need to enter a name for your new monitor under the **Monitor** column, and ***SBS** under **Type**. To change an existing monitor, enter a **2** beside the monitor you want to change, or enter a **2** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the monitor name and type. To display an existing monitor, enter a **5** beside the monitor you want to display, or enter a **5** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the monitor name and type.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add Subsystem Monitor display, the Change Subsystem Monitor display, or the Display Subsystem Monitor, according to which option you have chosen. The displays are identical.

```
                          Add Subsystem Monitor

Monitor . . . . . :   SAMPLE

Type choices, press Enter.

Subsystem . . . . . .                 Name
  Library . . . . . .     *LIBL       Name, *LIBL
Job limit . . . . . .                 Number (1-99)
Test  . . . . . .   *LT               *EQ, *GE, *GT, *LE, *LT
```

```
Schedule  . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *ALLDAYS       Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Inactivity interval . . . . . . . . .    15           Minutes (1-999)
Action  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .                 Name, F4 for list
Number of occurrences . . . . . . . .   10           Number (1-99)
Text  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *NONE
```

Some important fields for these displays include:

- **Subsystem**: The subsystem you want to monitor for active jobs.
- **Library**: The library that contains the subsystem
- **Job limit**: The upper limit of jobs (from 1 to 999) that can be placed on the specified job queue. When this number is reached the first time, ICOM/400 will initiate the specified Action. The Action will be initiated again when the number of occurrences has been met. The number of occurrences count is then reset to zero, and the cycle is repeated.
- **Test**: The logical operator that will be used to test the number of jobs under a specified subsystem. Possible values include:
  *EQ: You want to know if the number of jobs under the specified subsystem name is equal to the number that is specified in the Job Limit parameter.
  *GE: You want to know if the number of jobs under the specified subsystem name is equal to or greater than the number that is specified in the Job Limit parameter.
  *GT: You want to know if the number of jobs under the specified subsystem name is greater than the number that is specified in the Job Limit parameter.
  *LE: You want to know if the number of jobs under the specified subsystem name is equal to or less than the number that is specified in the Job Limit parameter.
  *LT: You want to know if the number of jobs under the specified subsystem name less than the number that is specified in the Job Limit parameter.

*User Defined (*USRDFN)*

The user defined monitor allows you to monitor operations that you define. A user defined monitor is very flexible. It's main function is to initiate an Action at a specific time or interval. The Action initiated can be defined to issue a command that will call a user created program to monitor or check a specific situation. The Action can also include the notification of a recipient, which can be conditioned upon ICM's recipient of an ICM3333 message from the user-created program.

A user defined monitor may also be used in a simplistic job scheduler fashion. By associating a schedule with the monitor that contains the same Start date/time and End date/time, the monitor will only be activated and initiate an Action once.

Adding, changing, or displaying a user defined monitor

To add, change, or display a user defined monitor, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Monitors display. You will also need to enter a name for your new monitor under the **Monitor** column, and ***USRDFN** under **Type**. To change an existing monitor, enter a **2** beside the monitor you want to change, or enter a **2** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type. To display an existing monitor, enter a **5** beside the monitor you want to display, or enter a **5** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name and monitor type.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add User Defined Monitor display, the Change User Defined Monitor display, or the Display User Defined Monitor, according to which option you have chosen. The displays are identical.

```
                        Add User Defined Monitor

Monitor . . . . . :   USER

Type choices, press Enter.

Schedule  . . . . . .   *ALLDAYS       Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Inactivity interval . . . . . .    15   Minutes (1-999)
Action  . . . . . .                     Name, F4 for list
Message . . . . . .   *NONE


Text  . . . . . .   *NONE
```

An important field on this display includes:

- **Message**: The message that you would like to associate with the monitor. This is the message that the monitor will send if the specified Action include notification information, such as a recipient. ***NONE** indicates that you want the ICOM/400 user defined monitor default message sent.

Option 2 = Start monitor

The Work with ICOM/400 Monitors command display allows you to start specific monitor types. Enter a **2** on the command line to start a specific monitor type or types.

```
                  Work with ICOM/400 Monitors (WRKMONICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Action to perform  . . . . . > *START        *LIST, *END, *START
Monitor type . . . . . .   *ALL          *ALL, *CFGSTS, *CPU...
               + for more values
```

You may start all monitor types or only a specific type. You can specify as many monitor types as you want. Monitors that are not currently running will be started.

Option 3 = End monitor

The Work with ICOM/400 Monitors command display allows you to end specific monitor types. Enter a **3** on the command line to end a specific monitor type or types.

```
                  Work with ICOM/400 Monitors (WRKMONICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Action to perform  . . . . . > *END          *LIST, *END, *START
Monitor type . . . . . .   *ALL          *ALL, *CFGSTS, *CPU...
               + for more values
```

You may end all monitor types or only a specify type. You can specify as many types as you want. Monitors must be currently running to be ended.

Option 4 = Work with monitor types

The Work with Monitor Types display allows you to specify monitors of a specific type with which you want to work. From this display, you can work with monitors of a specific type, start and end monitors, or work with the activity of a specific monitor type.

```
                          Work with Monitor Types
Type options, press Enter.
   6=Work with monitors      7=Start monitor type      8=End monitor type
   9=Work with activity
    Monitor
Opt  Type       Active     Text
     *CFGSTS      N        Configuration Description Status
     *CPU         N        CPU Percent Used
     *JOB         N        Job
     *JOBQ        N        Job Queue
     *MSGQ        N        Message Queue
     *NETF        N        Network file
     *OBJSIZ      N        Object size
     *OUTQ        N        Output Queue
     *QHST        N        QHST file
     *RMTDEV      N        Remote Device
     *SPLF        N        Spooled File
     *SBS         N        Subsystem
     *USRDFN      N        User Defined
```

Option 5 = Work with monitor subsystem

The Work with Monitor Subsystem option takes you to the Work with Active Job display.

```
                           Work with Active Jobs
                                                              03/23/03
11:00:46
 CPU %:     .0     Elapsed time:   00:00:00     Active jobs:   152

 Type options, press Enter.
   2=Change   3=Hold   4=End   5=Work with   6=Release   7=Display message
   8=Work with spooled files   13=Disconnect ...

 Opt  Subsystem/Job  User        Type  CPU %  Function        Status
      ZICOM400       QSYS        SBS      .0                  DEQW
        ICMCMSGQ     QPGMR       BCH      .0  PGM-ICMCMSGQ     DEQW
        ICOMDQM      QPGMR       BCH      .0  PGM-ICMCDQM      DEQW
        ICOMDQM3     QPGMR       BCH      .0  PGM-ICMCDQM      DEQW
        ICOMDQM4     QPGMR       BCH      .0  PGM-ICMCDQM      DEQW
        ICOMDQM5     QPGMR       BCH      .0  PGM-ICMCDQM      DEQW
        ICOMRPY1     QPGMR       BCH      .0  PGM-ICMCRPY      RUN
        QSYSOPR      QPGMR       BCH      .0  PGM-ICMC2MSGQ    DEQW
```

The Work with Active Jobs display shows the performance and status information for ICOM/400 jobs that are currently active on the system. This display is reached by taking Option 4 (Work with Monitor subsystem) on the Work with Monitors Main Menu.

This is an IBM command. For more information, see the help text or your IBM manual.

Option 6 = Work with schedules

See Chapter 6 for information on ICOM/400 schedules.

Option 7 = Work with Actions

The Work with Actions display shows all entries for Actions which are defined to ICOM/400.

Action entries are parameters which include such items as the name of the Action, the type of recipient, the name of the recipient you want the Action to affect, the reply, whether a command needs to be executed and a text description of the Action.

You can set up an unlimited number of Actions with varying specifications.

You can reach the Work with Actions display from the System Monitors menu (Option 6).

```
                              Work with Actions

Position to . . . . . .              Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add  2=Change  3=Copy  4=Remove  5=Display  7=Change command list

                Rcp
Opt Action      Type  Recipient   Reply       Cmd   Text

    BYTEST      *RCP  BELLSOUTH   *2WAY       *NO   *NONE
    CHECKJOB    *RCP  *NONE       *NONE       *YES  *NONE
    LANCE       *RCP  *NONE       *NONE       *YES  *NONE
    LBSNETF     *RCP  *NONE       *NONE       *YES  *NONE
    NETMSG      *RCP  NETMSG      *2WAY       *NO   *NONE
    SAMPLE      *RCP  SAMPLE      *NONE       *NO   Sample action
```

From this display, you can add, change, copy, remove or display Actions, as well as change the command list associated with an Action.

Adding, changing, or displaying an Action

To add, change, or display an Action, enter a **1** on the first line under the **Opt** column on the Work with Actions display. To change an existing Action, enter a **2** beside the Action you want to change, or enter a **2** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name. To display an existing Action, enter a **5** beside the Action you want to display, or enter a **5** in the first line under the **Opt** column, along with the name of the Action.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Add Action display, the Change Action display, or the Display Action display, according to which option you have chosen. The displays are identical.

```
                                  Add Action

Type choices, press Enter.

Action  . . . . . . . . . . . . . .                Name
Send type . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *RCP         *RCP, *GRP
Recipient/Group . . . . . . . . . .                Name, *ALL, *NONE, F4 ...
Selected recipients . . . . . . . .   *ALL         *ALL, *ONCALL
Message detail  . . . . . . . . . .   *JOBINF      *NONE, *JOBINF, *SECLVL...
Pre-defined message ID  . . . . . .   *NONE        Name, *NONE, F4 for list
Escalation table  . . . . . . . . .   *RCP         Name, *NONE, *RCP, F4 ...
Message reply . . . . . . . . . . .   *2WAY        Reply, *2WAY, *DFTRPY...
Use recipient pre/post information.   *NO          *NO, *YES
Delivery type . . . . . . . . . . .   *RCP         *RCP, *EMAIL, F4 for list
```

```
                                  Add Action

Type choices, press Enter.

Delay range:
  Begin time  . . . . . . . . . . .    0:00        Time (hh:mm)
  End time  . . . . . . . . . . . .    0:00        Time (hh:mm)
Text  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *NONE
```

Some important fields on the display include the following:

- **Send type**: Whether the Action is to effect a single recipient or group of recipients.
- **Recipient/Group**: The name of the recipient or group, depending on the value in the **Send type** field. ***NONE** indicates that the Action will not notify any recipient or group. Press F4 to bring up a list of recipients. You can place a 1 beside the recipient you want to choose or press F9 from this display to go to Work with Recipients.
- **Selected recipients**: Whether all recipients or only on-call recipients will be affected by this Action. ***ALL** indicates that all recipients will be affected by this Action. ***ONCALL** indicates that only recipients that are on-call will be affected by this Action. The following rules apply to the *ONCALL special value:

  1. If the Send type field contains the ***RCP** special value and the **Recipient/Group** field contains ***ALL**, only the on-call recipients will be affected. If no recipients are designated as on-call, then all recipients will be affected, if the **Notify recipients not oncall** field in the system attributes is ***YES**.
  2. If the Send type field contains the ***GRP** special value and the **Recipient/Group** field contains ***ALL**, only the on-call recipients in each group will be affected by the Action. If there are no recipients on-call in a group, then all recipients within the group will be affected, if the **Notify recipients not oncall** field in the system attributes is ***YES**.
  3. If the Send type field contains the ***GRP** special value and the **Recipient/Group** field contains a group name, and there is no on-call recipient, then all recipients in the group will be affected by the Action. If there is a recipient on-call in the group, then only that recipient will be affected, if the **Notify recipients not oncall** field in the system attributes is ***YES**.
- **Message detail**: The level of message detail that you want to send for the specified Action. ***JOBINF** indicates that you want to send job information. ***NONE** indicates that you do not want to send message detail. ***SECLVL** indicates that you want to send second level text. ***PREDEF** indicates that you want to send a pre-defined message for this Action. The pre-defined message ID must be specified in the **Pre-defined message** field.
- **Pre-defined message**: If ***PREDEF** was specified in the **Message detail** field, then a pre-defined message ID must be specified here. Otherwise, specify ***NONE** for this field. Press F4 to bring up a list of messages. You can place a 1 beside the message you want to send or press F9 from this display to go to Work with Pre-defined Messages.

- **Escalation table**: The escalation table to be used with this Action. Press F4 to bring up a list of tables. You can place a 1 beside the table you want to use or press F9 from this display to go to Work with Escalation Tables. **NOTE:** If you specify an escalation table, you will override the escalation table (if any) defined for the recipient. ***RCP** indicates to use the escalation table (if any) currently defined for the selected recipient associated with this Action. ***NONE** indicates that there is no escalation table defined for this Action; therefore, the Action will not escalate. This will override the escalation table (if any) defined for the recipient.
- **Message reply**: The reply to be issued as an Action in response to an inquiry message. The inquiry message is sent to a message queue being monitored by ICOM/400 that contains a message queue monitor entry specifying the inquiry message that would initiate this Action. The message can also be sent to a pager, e-mail client, or remote location if two-way communications is available. You can specify up to 10 characters and if the reply is not valid for the inquiry message, the reply will be rejected. ***2WAY** indicates that if you are using two-way communications, the reply is sent via a message from a pager, e-mail client or network message. ***NONE** indicates that there is no reply for the inquiry message. ***DFTRPY** indicates the default reply for the inquiry message is issued.
- **Use recipient pre/post information**: Whether to use recipient pre/post information for this Action. This is defined in the Work with Recipients display.
- **Delivery type**: The type of delivery method used for the selected Action. Delivery types are defined in Chapter 6 – Work with Recipients.
- **Delay range**: A time range during which the Action is delayed. If you want to enable the delay range, you must specify a begin and end time. The time is specified in hh:mm format.

Once you have added your Action, you may wish to change the command list associated with the Action. Type **7** by the Action whose command list you want to change and press Enter. You are taken to the Change Command List display.

```
                              Change Command List

Action . . . . . . . . . . . . . :  CHECKJOB
Text . . . . . . . . . . . . . . :  *NONE


Type choices, press Enter.

  Seq    Command

   10    CALL ICOMTOOLS/CHKJOB PARM('QTCPIP' 'QSYSWRK')
```

The Change Command List display shows the current stored commands for the Action that you have selected. You can enter an unlimited number of commands for each Action. Each command line is assigned a sequence number. Commands can be added, changed or removed from the Change Command List display. Commands can be prompted using F4.

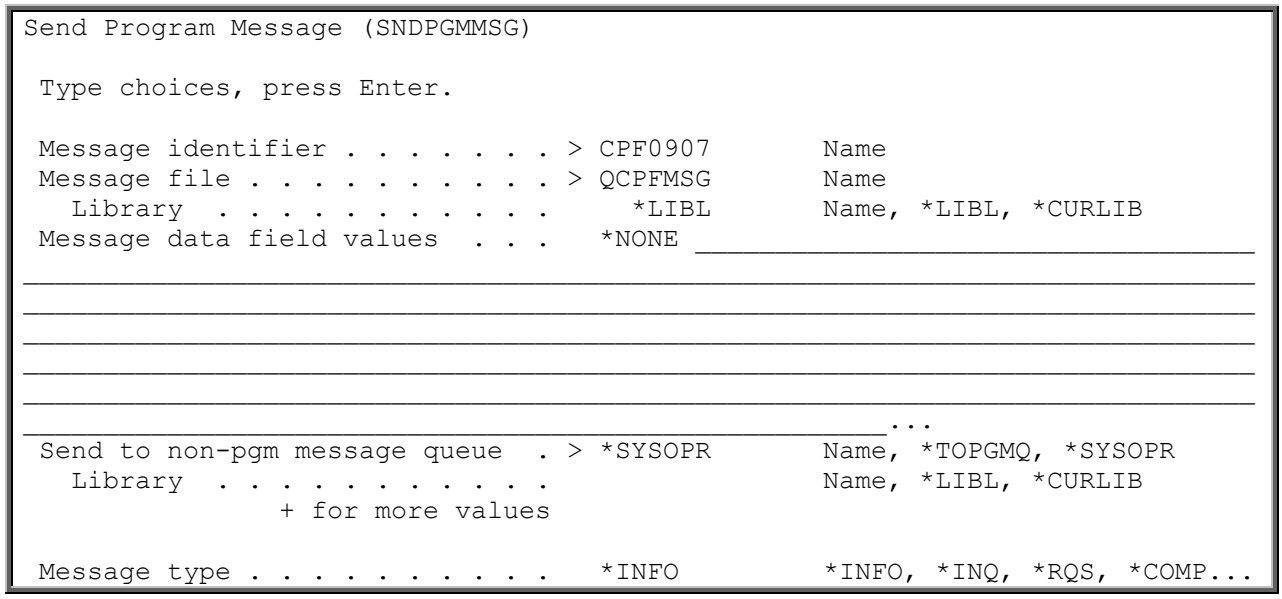
You can select from the following variables for use in this command. Place single quotes around each variable used.

Variable	Size	Description
&MSGQ	10	Message queue name
&MSGL	10	Message queue library name
&MSGID	7	Message ID
&SEV	2	Severity
&JOB	10	Job name
&USER	10	User profile associated with job
&JOBNBR	6	Job number

&PGM	10	Program
&MSGTYPE	10	Message type
&MSGFILE	10	Message file name
&MSGFLIB	10	Message file library name
&MSGKEY	4	Message key
&MSGDTA	1000	Message data
&TYPECODE	2	Message type number
&SPLF	10	Spooled file name
&SPLFNUM	4	Spooled file number
&SBSJOBS	3	Number of jobs running under a subsystem

Option 8 = Send program message

Option 8 takes you to the Send Program Message (SNDPGMMSG) command display.



The Send Program Message (SNDPGMMSG) command sends a message to a message queue.

This command can be used to test message queue monitoring.

For more information, see the help text or your IBM manual.

Option 12 = Add monitor entries based on message queue.

Option 12 allows you to display message entries based on a message queue and add them as message queue monitor entries.

After selecting Option 12, you are taken to the Display Message Queue (DSPMSGICM) command display. You may select which message queue you want to display, as well as specific message ID within that message queue. For more information on the Display Message Queue command, see Chapter 10.

Once you have selected the message queue that you want to display, you are taken to the Display Message Queue display, which shows all the messages in the message queue you have selected.

```
                              Display Message Queue
                                                                  2/14/00   9:39:35
 Position to message ID . .

 Type options, press Enter.
   5=Display

      Message
 Opt  ID       Count    Message
      CPCA08C     14  *************** file system mounted.
      CPC8A21      1  Activity related to documents and folders is now allowed.
      CPC8A22      1  All documents and folders are now available.
      CPD2692      1  Device ********** vary on failed.  Reset required.
      CPFAFAF      1  ********** completed successfully.
      CPFA11A      2  IP over SNA not activated.
      CPF0934      1  IPL completed.
      CPF0993      1  Start of controlling subsystem in progress during IPL.
      CPF1103      9  Subsystem ********** started.
      CPF1187     27  Subsystem ********** cannot allocate work station ********
      CPF1804      9  Subsystem ********** in library ********** starting.
```

You may display a message by entering a 5 beside the message ID you want to display and pressing enter. The Display Detail screen displays the details of the message.

```
2/14/00                         Display Detail
  9:55:19                                        Position to . . . .
2/14/00

 --------------------------------  2/14/00 ----------------------------------
 STRMSF completed successfully.




Bottom
 Press Enter to continue.


 F3=Exit    F8=Add to monitor    F12=Cancel    F17=Top    F18=Bottom
```

To add a message to a monitor as a monitor entry, press F8. You are taken to the Add Monitor Entry display. The message ID of the message is automatically entered into the **Message ID** field.

```
                              Add Monitor Entry

Type choices, press Enter.

Monitor . . . . . .                  Name, F4 for list
Monitor type  . . . . . .  *MSGQ      *MSGQ, *QHST
Sequence  . . . . . .       10        Number, 1-999
Schedule  . . . . . .      *ALLDAYS   Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Severity limit  . . . . .   0         Number, 00-99
Job name  . . . . . .      QZMFECOX   Name, generic*, *ALL
User  . . . . . .          QMSF       Name, generic*, *ALL
Program . . . . . .        QZMFESTR   Name, generic*, *ALL
Message ID  . . . . . .    CPFAFAF    Name, generic*, *ALL
Message type  . . . . . .  *INFO      Type, *ALL
Action  . . . . . .                   Name, *NONE, F4 for list
Include/Exclude . . . . .  *INC       *INC, *EXC
```

```
Skip to sequence  . . . . . .   *NEXT        1-999, *END, *NEXT
Force action  . . . . . . . .   *NO          *NO, *YES
Base on command response  . . . . .   *NO          *NO, *YES
```

You must supply the monitor name in the **Monitor** field and an Action in the **Action** field. Once you have entered all the pertinant information, press Enter. Your monitor entry is added to the monitor your specify and you are returned to the Display Details display.

Option 13 = Add monitor entries based on QHST.

Option 13 allows you to display message entries based on QHST and add them as QHST monitor entries.

After selecting Option 13, you are taken to the Display QHST using ICOM/400 (DSPQHSTICM) command display. For more information on the Display QHST using ICOM/400 command, see Chapter 10.

Once you have selected parameters for QHST that you want to display, you are taken to the Display QHST Log Entry display, which shows all the messages in QHST based on the parameters you selected.

```
                              Display QHST Log Entry
                                                                2/14/00  10:33:00
Position to message ID . .

Type options, press Enter.
5=Display

Message
Opt  ID       Count    Message
CPCA08C     14  **************** file system mounted.
CPC1134      2  Shared pool ********** changed.
CPC1236      5  Job //******* submitted for job schedule entry **********
CPC1602      2  Subsystem description ********** in library ********** cha
CPC2191      1  Object ********** in ********** type ******** deleted.
CPC2605     11  Vary on completed for device **********.
CPC2607      1  Vary on completed for line **********.
CPC2609      9  Vary on completed for controller **********.
CPC3701      9  1549556828 objects saved from library **********.
CPC3704      7  1549556828 objects saved from library **********.
CPC3708      2  No objects saved from library **********. All objects excl
                                                                       More...
```

You may display a message by entering a 5 beside the message ID you want to display and pressing enter. The Display Detail screen displays the details of the message.

```
2/14/00                         Display Detail
  9:55:19                                       Position to . . . .
2/14/00

 --------------------------------  2/14/00 ----------------------------------
 STRMSF completed successfully.




Bottom
 Press Enter to continue.
```

```
F3=Exit    F8=Add to monitor    F12=Cancel    F17=Top    F18=Bottom
```

To add a message to a monitor as a monitor entry, press F8. You are taken to the Add Monitor Entry display. The message ID of the message is automatically entered into the **Message ID** field.

```
                              Add Monitor Entry

Type choices, press Enter.

Monitor . . . . . . . . . . . . . .                Name, F4 for list
Monitor type  . . . . . . . . . . .   *QHST        *MSGQ, *QHST
Sequence  . . . . . . . . . . . . .    10          Number, 1-999
Schedule  . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *ALLDAYS     Name, *ALLDAYS, F4
Severity limit  . . . . . . . . . .    0           Number, 00-99
Job name  . . . . . . . . . . . . .   QZMFECOX     Name, generic*, *ALL
User  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   QMSF         Name, generic*, *ALL
Program . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   QZMFESTR     Name, generic*, *ALL
Message ID  . . . . . . . . . . . .   CPFAFAF      Name, generic*, *ALL
Message type  . . . . . . . . . . .   *INFO        Type, *ALL
Action  . . . . . . . . . . . . . .                Name, *NONE, F4 for list
Include/Exclude . . . . . . . . . .   *INC         *INC, *EXC
Skip to sequence  . . . . . . . . .   *NEXT        1-999, *END, *NEXT
Force action  . . . . . . . . . . .   *NO          *NO, *YES
Base on command response  . . . . .   *NO          *NO, *YES
```

You must supply the monitor name in the **Monitor** field and an Action in the **Action** field. Once you have entered all the pertinent information, press Enter. Your monitor entry is added to the monitor you specify and you are returned to the Display Details display.

Option 16 = Work with address information.

Select this option to display Address Information entries that are used to determine the location of the email address within a spooled file. This allows a spooled file to be split and sent to different email addresses. An exit program can also be used to retrieve an email address based on information found in the spooled file. For instance, an account number may be on each page of the spooled file and passed to the exit program, which in turn will pass back the email address for that account. This field is not used in conjunction with the Action list. The SNDSPLFICM command is used if this field is specified. Address Information is used in spooled file monitor entries.

```
                         Add Address Information

Type choices, press Enter.

Address information name  . . . . .                Name
Address location in spooled file:
  Line number . . . . . . . . . . .       1        1-256, *TEXT
  Starting position . . . . . . . .        1       1-256, *AFTER
  Length  . . . . . . . . . . . . .    30          1-60
  Search text . . . . . . . . . . .

Program to retrieve address . . . .   *NONE        Name, *NONE
  Library . . . . . . . . . . . . .                Name, *LIBL
Attachment name . . . . . . . . . .   ATTACH       Name
Attachment type . . . . . . . . . .   PDF          TXT, PDF
Text  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *NONE
```

Chapter 9 - System Controls

This chapter is important to the proper functioning of ICOM/400. The **Change System Attributes** display allows you to define and change the system defaults for ICOM/400. Changing a default on this display can affect the entire system.

Work with Function Authorities allows you to define and change security for ICOM/400. Function authorities are the levels of authority that your users have to various features of ICOM/400. There are two types of function authorities. The first type of authority either allows the user access to the function or not. The second type of authority allows the user different authority levels within the function.

Work with page queues shows the user all the page queues that have one or more messages pending for a particular paging company. Each paging company is implicitly defined as an individual page queue.

The Work with Spooled Files command display allows you to specify which spooled files you want to work with by specifying the name of spooled file, as well as the job, user, output queue, and time period for output for the spooled files you want to display.

Option 1 = Change System Attributes

Entering **Option 1** from the System Controls menu takes you to the Change System Attributes display.

```
V2R0M10                Change System Attributes

Type choices, press Enter.

  Activity retention days  . . . . . .    10          Number (1-999)
  Log entries retention days . . . . . .  30          Number (1-999)
  Dial type  . . . . . .  . . . . . .     T           T=Tone, P=Pulse
  Inactivity interval  . . . . . .  . .   15          Minutes (1-999)
  Autostart monitors . . . . . .  . . .   *NO         *NO, *YES
  Send message in restricted state . . .  *NO         *NO, *YES
  Notify recipients not oncall . . . . .  *NO         *NO, *YES

Paging:
  Resource #1:
    Primary shared resource name . . . .  CMN01       Name
    Secondary shared resource name . . .              Name
    Telephone prefix . . . . . .  . . .   9,          Character
  Resource #2:
    Primary shared resource name . . . .              Name
    Secondary shared resource name . . .              Name
    Telephone prefix . . . . . .  . . .               Character
```

```
V2R0M10                Change System Attributes

Type choices, press Enter.

Vary lines off after transmission  . .   *YES          *NO, *YES
Default pager ID . . . . . .  . . . . .  *NONE
Default pager company  . . . . . .  . .  *NONE        Name, *NONE
Pre-Modem instructions . . . . . .  . .
Post-Modem instructions  . . . . . .  .
```

```
Reply message inactivity interval  . .    1            Minutes (1-99)

Batch message queue  . . . . . .   *USER         Name, *USER, *NONE
  Library  . . . . . . . . . . .     *LIBL       Name, *LIBL
Interactive message queue  . . . . .   *USER         Name, *USER, *NONE
  Library  . . . . . . . . . . .     *LIBL       Name, *LIBL

Voice:
  Communication PC IP address  . . . . .   *NONE

  Communication PC port  . . . . . .   49000          Number (1-65535)
  Telephone prefix . . . . . . . . .                  Character
```

```
V2R0M10               Change System Attributes

Type choices, press Enter.

Spooled file:
  Copies . . . . . . . . . . . . . .    1            Number (1-99)
  Form type  . . . . . . . . . . . .   *STD          Character, *STD
  Hold spooled file  . . . . . . . .   *NO           *NO, *YES
  Save spooled file  . . . . . . . .   *NO           *NO, *YES

Fax:
  Line resource name . . . . . . . .                  Name
  Telephone prefix . . . . . . . . .                  Character
  Number of retries  . . . . . . . .     3           Number (1-9)
  Baud rate  . . . . . . . . . . . .    2400         2400, 4800, 7200...
  Company name . . . . . . . . . . .

  Return fax number  . . . . . . . .


  Line wrap action . . . . . . . . .   *NOWRAP       *NOWRAP, *WRAP
                                                                More...
```

```
V2R0M10               Change System Attributes

Type choices, press Enter.

E-mail:
  ICOM/400 e-mail address  . . . . . .   icom@pbsnow.com

  SMTP host server address . . . . . .   smtp.webzone.net

       Port  . . . . . . . . . . . .      25          Number (1-65535)
  POP3 host server address . . . . . .   pop3.webzone.net

       Port  . . . . . . . . . . . .     110          Number (1-65535)

  Account Name . . . . . . . . . . .   icom
  Password . . . . . . . . . . . . .   icom400
  Reply message inactivity interval  . .    1            Minutes (1-99)
```

The Change System Attributes display allows you to change ICOM/400 defaults. Changing a default value here can affect the entire system. Not only can you change the general system defaults for this display, you can also change the defaults relating to paging, email, faxing, and spooled files.

General defaults

The following list contains the general defaults for ICOM/400. These defaults affect all functions on ICOM/400:

- **Activity retention days**: The number of days to retain activity history before it is automatically purged by ICOM/400. The default for this parameter is 10 days. You may specify between 1 and 999 days to retain activity. Activity that is older than the number of days specified will be automatically removed from the system.
- **Log entries retention days**: The number of days that you want to keep history log entries before they are automatically removed by ICOM/400. The default for this parameter is 30 days. You may specify a number of days between 1 and 999 to retain history. History older than this number of days will be automatically removed from the system.
- **Dial type**: Specifies whether you want to use a pulse or tone for messages sent to pager devices. **T** specifies tone; **P** specifies pulse.
- **Inactivity interval**: The number of minutes for ICOM/400 to wait before retrying to send pending and ready status messages. This interval is used only when other message activity is not present to cause retry of unsent messages. Specifying this value guarantees that unsent message are retried at intervals not exceeding this number of minutes.
- **Autostart monitors**: Whether you want to automatically start monitors after you have reset ICOM/400. If you specify ***YES**, the monitors will automatically start after the subsystem ZICOM400 has started.
- **Send message in restricted state**: Whether to allow messages to be sent when the system is in a restricted state. **NOTE:** E-mail message cannot be sent when the system is in a restricted state.
- **Notify recipients not oncall**: Specifies to notify recipients that are not oncall. This is enabled when you send a message to recipients who are oncall, and there are no recipients designated *ONCALL.

Paging

The following specifies the defaults used for paging with ICOM/400.

Resource #1 and #2 – Resources #1 and #2 are used to specify multiple lines that can be used for paging. You do not have to have two resources to use ICOM/400.

- **Primary shared resource name**: The primary communication resource that is to be used for transmitting messages for this resource. The primary shared communication resource is always used unless it is busy. The primary resource name is not edited. You can have a primary shared resource for either of two resources.
- **Secondary shared resource name**: The secondary shared communication resource that is to be used when the primary communication shared resource is busy. A modem similar to the one attached to the primary resource should be attached to the secondary shared communication resource. The secondary resource name is not edited. You can have a secondary shared resource for either of two resources.
- **Telephone prefix**: The telephone prefix associated with your resources. A telephone prefix is a number or symbol that needs to be placed in front of a telephone number that you will dial with your AS/400 modem. For example, you might have to dial a 9 (or other number) to get an outside line, or enter a code that is to be used for tracking and billing purposes. Commas can be used when a pause is required before dialing the number. Each comma represents a one or two second delay.

Other defaults for paging include:

- **Vary lines off after transmission**: Whether to vary communication resources off after paging is complete. The default for this field is ***YES**. If you have changed the value of the

field to ***NO**, and you have changed the information for a paging company, you must process Option 3 (Reset ICOM/400) from the system controls menu to inform the monitor to retrieve changes within the paging company. ***NO** is typically used when you have only one paging company.

- **Default pager ID**: The default pager ID that is used on the Send Message using ICOM/400 (SNDMSGICM) command when no recipient is specified and specific delivery information is required. ***NONE** indicates that you do no want a default pager ID.
- **Default pager company**: The default pager company that is used on the SNDMSGICM command when ***NONE** is specified for the recipient and ***SYSDFT** is specified for the default pager and pager company. ***NONE** on this field indicates that you do not want a default pager company.
- **Pre- and Post-modem instructions**: Pre- and post-modem instructions are set-up strings that are sent to the modem before and after the communication session. These strings are composed of the Hayes/Attention command set, are fairly standard but allow for an "expanded" command set to be defined by the modem manufacturer to fully utilize a modem's capabilities.

  NOTE: For 99.9% of modems, including the IBM 5853 ECS modem, both of these set strings can normally be left blank. However, if you do need to put instructions in these fields, your pager company will inform you of the strings that you will utilize.

- **Reply message inactivity interval**: The amount of time you want ICOM/400 to wait before checking for a reply to a message. This is used only when two-way communication is available. This can range from 1 to 99 minutes, with the default being 15 minutes.

Voice

The following defaults apply to voice messaging:

- **Communication PC IP address**: The IP address of the machine that you want to use for voice messaging.
- **Communication PC port**: The port of the PC you are using for voice messaging that runs the text recognition software. This can be a number from 1 to 65535. The default port number is 49000.
- **Telephone prefix**: A telephone prefix is a number or symbol that needs to be placed in front of a telephone number that you will dial with your AS/400 modem. For example, you might have to dial a 9 (or other number) to get an outside line, or enter a code that is to be used for tracking and billing purposes. Commas can be used when a pause is required before dialing the number. Each comma represents a one or two second delay.

Spooled Files

The following defaults apply to spooled files:

- **Copies**: The number of copies of spooled files that you want to produce for a recipient. This number can range from 1 to 99.
- **Form type**: The form type to use for reports that you produce for a recipient. ***STD** indicates that you want to use the standard form used by your computer system to produce the spooled file.
- **Hold spooled file**: Whether spooled files are to be held when produced by ICOM/400. ***YES** indicates that the spooled file is to be put in **Held** status on the output queue when produced by ICOM/400.
- **Save spooled file**: Whether spooled files are to be saved on an output queue when produced by ICOM/400.

Faxing

The following defaults apply to faxing:

- **Line resource name**: The name of the communications resource that is to be used when transmitting fax messages.
- **Number of retries**: The number of times you want to re-dial the fax number. This can range from 1 to 9 retries.
- **Baud rate**: The baud rate of the modem that you are using to send faxes.
- **Company name**: The name of the company (your company) sending the fax that will be used with the fax header page.
- **Return fax number**: The fax phone number associated with the company that is sending the fax that will be used with the fax header page
- **Line wrap action**: The step that you want to take when a line in a message or file has more characters than the page on which it is printed. ***NOWRAP** indicates that the message should not wrap around the page. This means that any characters that cannot be displayed on the line on which they occurred will be cut off. An example of ***NOWRAP** is displayed below:

  This is an example of ***NOWRAP** for the Li
  field on the Change system attributes displ

  ***WRAP** indicates that the message should wrap to the next line. If there are too many characters for the page, the extra characters wrap around to the next line. The following line is placed on the line below. An example of ***WRAP** is displayed below:

  This is an example of ***WRAP** for the
  Line wrap
  action field on the Change system
  attributes display.

E-mail

These are the defaults associated with e-mail:

- **ICOM/400 e-mail address**: The e-mail address that will used as a default when sending e-mail messages. All error messages and replies received will be routed to this e-mail address.
- **SMTP host server address**: The Simple Mail Transfer Protocol(SMTP) server's TCP/IP address. If you are connected to the Internet, the default address will be adequate, but for better performance specify your ISP's mail server address. If you are protected by a firewall, you must ask your mail administrator for the address number. If you aren't able to obtain the SMTP address, but do know the server NAME, you can access the SMTP address. Simply type ping '<server name>' from any command line. An example of a server name is: mail.pbsnow.com.
- **Port**: The port through which you access your outgoing mail. This is a number between 1 and 65535. The default is 25.
- **POP3 host server address**: The Post Office Protocol (POP3) server's address which is used to manage incoming mail. An example of a POP3 server address is: pop3.pbsnow.com.
- **Port**: The port through which you access your incoming mail. This is a number between 1 and 65535. The default is 25
- **Account name**: The name that is used to logon to the ICOM/400 e-mail address. This is usually the text that appears before the @ sign in the e-mail address. For example, for the e-mail address support@domain.com, the account name is support.
- **Password**: The password for the e-mail account specified in the Account name field. This password will be used to logon to your e-mail account.

Other attributes

The following defaults specify the message queues you want to use for ICOM/400 processing:

- **Batch message queue**: The message queue and its associated library that you want to receive the successful/unsuccessful messages that are a result of ICOM/400 batch processing. The default recipient is the user of the batch job. ***NONE** indicates that the messages are not sent to a user or message queue.
- **Interactive message queue**: The message queue and its associated library that you want to receive the successful/unsuccessful messages that are a result of ICOM/400 interactive processing. The default recipient is the user of the interactive job. ***NONE** indicates that the messages are not sent to a user or message queue.

Option 2 = Work with Function Authorities

To go to the Work with Function Authorities display, enter a **2** on the command line of the System Controls menu.

```
                        Work with Function Authorities

Type options, press Enter.
  2=Edit function authority

Opt    Function      Text
       *CHGSYSDFT    Change system attributes
       *DSPLOG       Display log
       *DSPQHST      Display QHST
       *ENDMON       End monitors
       *HLDMON       Hold monitor
       *MONMSGQ      Monitor message queue in restricted state
       *RLSMON       Release monitor
       *RMVATV       Remove activity
       *RMVLOGE      Remove log entries
       *SECURITY     Security
       *SNDALL       Send to all recipients
       *SNDMSG       Send message
       *SNDSPLF      Send spooled file
       *STRMON       Start monitors
```

```
                        Work with Function Authorities

Type options, press Enter.
  2=Edit function authority

Opt    Function      Text
       *WRKACT       Work with actions
       *WRKATV       Work with activity
       *WRKCMP       Work with pager companies
       *WRKESC       Work with escalation tables
       *WRKFCT       Work with functions
       *WRKGRP       Work with recipient groups
       *WRKHST       Work with history
       *WRKMAIL      Work with POP email
       *WRKMON       Work with monitors
       *WRKMSG       Work with pre-defined messages
       *WRKPAGQ      Work with page queue
       *WRKRCP       Work with recipients
       *WRKSCD       Work with schedules
```

The Work with Function Authorities display shows a list of the function authorities available in ICOM/400. For each function you choose, you are taken to the Edit Function Authority display where you can assign the function authority to the user or group of users you specify. Enter a **2** beside the function authority you want to change.

There are two basic different displays for editing function authorities. The first display allows you to specify a user and whether they have the authority to use the function. The second allows you not only to specify whether the user has the authority to use the function, but also how much authority the user has within the function, such as whether they can add, update, remove, and so on information related to that function.

The first type of function authority is displayed below:

```
                          Edit Function Authority

Function name  . . . . . :  *CHGSYSDFT
Text . . . . . :  Change system attributes


Type changes to current authorities, press Enter.

            Function
User        Authority
*PUBLIC     *USE
```

This Edit Function Authority display allows the security office to determine whether users have the authority to perform certain activities on ICOM/400, and to add users that will be able to use or be excluded from using this particular activity.

The types of authorities that use this display include:

Name	Function Authority
***CHGSYSDFT**	Allows user to change system attributes
***DSPLOG**	Allows user to display the ICOM/400 log
***DSPQHST**	Allows user to display the QHST log
***ENDMON**	Allows user to end a monitor
***HLDMON**	Allows user to hold a monitor
***MONMSGQ**	Allows user to monitor a message queue during a restricted state
***RLSMON**	Allows user to release a monitor
***RMVATV**	Allows user to remove activity
***RMVLOGE**	Allows user to remove ICOM/400 log entries
***SECURITY**	Turns security on and off for a user
***SNDALL**	Allows user to send a message to all recipients
***SNDMSG**	Allows a user to send a message
***SNDSPLF**	Allows user to send a spooled file to recipients
***STRMON**	Allows a user to start a monitor
***WRKATV**	Allows a user to work with activity
***WRKFCT**	Allows a user to work with function authorities
***WRKPAGQ**	Allows a user to work with page queues

The Edit Function Authority display shows a list of the current users authorized to a function. You can add users to the list, remove users from the list, and change the level of authority of the users.

To add users to the list, press the F6 key (Add new users) to get another display, similar to this one, where you can type the new users and the desired authority levels.

To remove users from the list, type blanks in the **Function authority** field beside the user you want to remove.

The system applies the authority changes only after you have pressed the Enter key. When you press Enter on a display making updates, you are shown the list again with the updates applied. If you press the Enter key again, without typing on the display, the system returns you to where you were when you requested the edit function.

Some important fields on this display include:

- **User**: The user profile name of users who have specific authorities specified for this function. ***PUBLIC** indicates that all users are included or excluded from using this function
- **Function authority:** Whether this user or group of users can use the ICOM/400 function. ***USE** indicates that the user or group of users can utilize the specified ICOM/400 function. ***EXCLUDE** indicates that the user or group of users cannot utilize the function.

*SECURITY

The Function Authority ***SECURITY** needs extra definition. This authority allows you to turn on or off the security function of ICOM/400. If ***USE** is specified under **Function authority** for user ***PUBLIC**, the ICOM/400 function authorities are turned on. If ***EXCLUDE** is specified, the ICOM/400 function authorities are turned off. You can turn on and off security for specific users by adding them to the display.

The second type of Edit Function Authority display is displayed below:

```
                          Edit Function Authority

Function . . . . . . . . . . . :  *WRKACT
Text . . . . . . . . . . . . . :  Work with actions


Type changes to current authorities, press Enter.

            Function                                              Change
User        Authority   Add  Update  Remove  Display  Copy  Authority
*PUBLIC     *CHANGE      X              X                X       X
```

This display allows the security officer not only to determine who has the authority to use certain functions, but also how much authority that user has. From this display, the security officer can allow the user to Add, Update, Remove, Display, Copy or Change Authority on the particular ICOM/400 function. For example a user may be able to display and update information on a certain display, but not add or remove information.

The types of authorities that use this type of display are:

Name	*Function Authority*
***WRKACT**	Allows user to work with actions
***WRKCMP**	Allows user to work with pager companies
***WRKESC**	Allows user to work with escalation tables
***WRKGRP**	Allows user to work with recipient groups
***WRKMAIL**	Allows user to work with e-mail
***WRKMON**	Allows user to work with monitors
***WRKMSG**	Allows user to work with pre-defined messages
***WRKRCP**	Allows user to work with recipients
***WRKSCH**	Allows user to work with schedules

The Edit Function Authority display shows a list of current users authorized to a function and the authority levels that each user has been assigned. You can add users to the list, remove users from the list, and change the authority level of users.

When the authority of a function is checked, ICOM/400 first checks the user profile. If the user profile is not found, ICOM/400 checks for a group profile. If neither is found, ICOM/400 checks ***PUBLIC**.

You can specify authority levels in one of two ways:

1. Assign one of the predefined system values for the function authority level (***USE**, ***ALL**, ***CHANGE**, ***EXCLUDE**).
2. Assign user-defined authority levels. User-defined authority levels are created by placing or removing **'X'**s from the columns.

Whichever technique you use, the system determines the function authority values or specific authorities based on the information you have typed. If you type both function authority values and specific authorities for a user, the specific authorities are used.

To change the authority level of a user, type over the appropriate columns in the user's rows. Except for the **Function authority** column, you give the user the named authority by typing an **'X'** in the

column and remove the authority by typing a blank (spacebar) in the column. To change the **Function authority** column, type the new authority over the current authority.

To add users to the list, press the F6 key (Add new users) to get another display, similar to this one, where you can type the new users and the desired authority levels.

To remove users from the list, type blanks into all of the authorities columns (including **Function authority**) that are shown.

The system applies the authority changes ONLY after you have pressed the Enter key. When you press Enter on a display after keying updates, you are shown the list again with the updates applied. If you press Enter again, without typing on the display, the system returns you to where you were when you requested the edit function.

Some important fields on this display include the following:

- **Function authority:** The authority that a user has to a function. Several different system-defined function authority levels may be assigned to users. ***ALL** allows all operations on the function. ***CHANGE** allows all operations on the function except remove and change authority authorities. ***EXCLUDE** indicates that all operations on this function are excluded. ***USE** allows read access of the function. The user cannot change the function. **USER DEF** is displayed by the system when the specific function authorities do not map to any of the pre-defined function authorities above.
- **Add:** Specify an **'X'** under the **Add** column to specify the function authority to add an entry. If this authority is not granted, **Add** should be blank.
- **Update:** Specify an **'X'** under the **Update** column to specify the function authority to update an entry. If this authority is not granted, **Update** should be blank.
- **Remove:** Specify an **'X'** under the **Remove** column to specify the function authority to remove an entry. If this authority is not granted, **Remove** should be blank.
- **Display:** Specify an **'X'** under the **Display** column to specify the function authority to display an entry. If this authority is not granted, **Display** should be blank.
- **Copy:** Specify an **'X'** under the **Copy** column to specify the function authority to copy an entry. If this authority is not granted, **Copy** should be blank.
- **Change authority:** Specify an **'X'** under the **Change authority** column to specify the function authority to change the authority for an entry. If this authority is not granted, **Change authority** should be blank.

Edit Function Authority - *WRKHST

The Edit Function Authority display for *WRKHST differs from the other Edit Function Authority displays. Special care should be taken to review each of the available security functions. As in all functional authority displays, you can add users to the list, remove users from the list and change the authority level of users

Some important fields on this display include the following:

- **List all**: Specify an **'X'** in the **List All** field to specify authority to list all messages, regardless of who the recipient or sender of the message may be. If this authority is not granted, the List All field should be blank.
- **Display all**: Specify an **'X'** in the Display All field to specify authority to display all messages, regardless of who the recipient or sender of the message may be. If this authority is not granted, the Display all field should be blank.
- **Dsp/Lst sender**: Specify an **'X'** in the Dsp/Lst sender field to specify the authority to list and display all messages that were sent by the user. If this authority is not granted, the Dsp/Lst field should be blank.
- **Release/Hold**: Specify an **'X'** in the Release/Hold field to specify the authority to hold or release a message. If this authority is not granted, the Release/Hold field should be blank.

- **Resend**: Specify an **'X'** in the Resend field to specify the authority to resend a message. If this authority is not granted, the Resend field should be blank.
- **Remove**: Specify an **'X'** in the Remove field to specify the authority to remove a message. If this authority is not granted, the Remove field should be blank.
- **Acknowledge**: Specify an **'X'** in the Ack field to specify the authority to acknowledge a message. If this authority is not granted, the Ack field should be blank.

Option 3 = Reset ICOM/400

Select Option 3 to reset ICOM/400. When the product is reset, the following processes take place:

- ZICOM400 subsystem is ended and restarted.
- All ICOM/400 lines, controllers and devices are deleted.
- All ICOM/400 data queues are deleted.
- All files have their authority changed to allow QPGMR *ALL authority.

Option 4 = Work with Page Queues

Choose Option 4 to go to the Work with Page Queues display.

```
                              Work with Page Queues
                                                                  15:22:25
Type options, press Enter.
  2=Work with pages    3=Hold    6=Release    8=Send now

     Pager       Company   Queue  Force   Queue   Force      -- Schedule --
Opt Company      Status    Depth  Depth    Time    Time      Date      Time


         (No pages currently in queue)
```

The Work with Page Queues display shows all queues that have one or more pages pending for a particular paging company. Each paging company is implicitly defined as a page queue, and the Force Depth and Force Time values are specified within the corresponding paging company. You can work with a page queue, hold or release a page queue or send messages in a page queue immediately. The queue depth (the current number of pages in the queue), the force depth (the maximum number of pages this queue can hold), the queue time (the maximum number of seconds remaining before these pages will be sent) and the force time (the maximum amount of time that can elapse before a transmission) as well as the next scheduled time and date of the queue's pages is displayed.

Some important fields on this display include the following:

- **Company status**: The status of the company page queue. **Held** specifies that the company pager company queue is in hold status. Pending pages for this company will not be sent until the company is released. **Sending** specifies that pages in the queue are currently in the process of being transmitted to the pager company.
- **Released**: The page queue has been released from a held condition and is now available to transmit pages to the pager company.
- **Queue depth**: The number of pager messages that are currently in the company queue. Messages are transmitted from the company page queue automatically when one of three conditions occur:
    1. The **Queue depth** equals the value specified in the **Force depth** field.
    2. The number of seconds in the **Queue time** filed exceeds the number of seconds in the **Force time** field.
    3. When other pages not included in the queue are sent to this paging company (i.e., when a page is sent specifying **PAGQ(*NO)**).

- **Force depth**: The number of messages in the company page queue that forces the automatic transmission of the messages to the specified pager company.
- **Queue time**: The number of seconds remaining before pages in this queue are automatically sent. Messages are transmitted automatically when one of three conditions occur (see **Queue depth** for a list of the conditions.)
- **Force time**: The maximum number of seconds that a pending message may remain in the queue.
- **Scheduled date**: The date that the messages in the queue are scheduled to be sent in month, day, year (MM/DD/YY) format. This date is calculated based upon the **Queue time** and **Force time** values.
- **Scheduled time**: The time that the messages in the queue are scheduled to be sent in hour, minute, second (HH/MM/SS) format. This time is calculated based on the **Queue time** and **Force time** values.

Option 5 = Work with Spooled Files

Choose Option 5 to go to the Work with Spooled Files (WRKSPLFICM) command display.

```
                    Work with Spooled Files (WRKSPLFICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Spooled File Name  . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, *ALL
Job  . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, *ALL
User . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Name, *CURRENT, *ALL
Output Queue . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, *ALL
  Library  . . . . . .     *LIBL       Name, *LIBL
Time period for list:
  Start time and date:
  Beginning time . . . . . .   *AVAIL        Time, *AVAIL
  Beginning date . . . . . .   *BEGIN        Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN,
nnnnn
  End time and date:
  Ending time  . . . . . .   *AVAIL        Time, *AVAIL
  Ending date  . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn
```

The Work with Spooled Files ICM (WRKSPLFICM) command displays a list of spooled files available for distribution. You may select a time range for the list of spooled files.

When you press Enter, you are taken to the Work with Spooled Files using ICM display.

```
                    Work with Spooled Files using ICM
                                                              3/16/03
15:58:13
Type options, press Enter.
  2=Change  5=Display  7=Send  8=Send (SNDSPLFICM)

Opt  File        Job         User       Output Queue   Date      Time
     TRKRCST     TRKRCST     BRUCE       QPRINT       3/15/03  10:54:29
     TESTATTACH  TESTATTACH  LANCE       QPRINT       3/15/03  11:02:01
     TESTATTACH  TESTATTACH  LANCE       QPRINT       3/15/03  11:04:08
     TESTATTACH  TESTATTACH  LANCE       QPRINT       3/15/03  11:11:18
     ITSRFRM01   ITSRFRM01   STEVEN      QPRINT       3/15/03  11:12:01
     TESTATTACH  TESTATTACH  LANCE       QPRINT       3/15/03  11:14:22
     QPJOBLOG    QPADEV0008  STEVEN      QEZJOBLOG    3/15/03  11:24:32
     QPUOPRTF    QPADEV0018  BRUCE       QPRINT       3/15/03  11:32:00
```

```
    ITSRFRM01   ITSRFRM01   STEVEN      QPRINT       3/15/03  11:40:06
    ASMEXIT     ASMEXIT     BRUCE       QPRINT       3/15/03  12:22:02
    ASMEXIT     ASMEXIT     BRUCE       QPRINT       3/15/03  12:31:45
    QPJOBLOG    RESET       BRUCE       QEZJOBLOG    3/15/03  12:46:08
    QPUOPRTF    QPADEV0018  BRUCE       QPRINT       3/15/03  13:30:33
    QPJOBLOG    QPADEV0005  STEVEN      QEZJOBLOG    3/15/03  13:31:40
```

The Work with Spooled Files using ICM display shows all spooled files that you requested as a result of processing the Work with Spooled Files using ICM (WRKSPLFICM) command. The display can contain all spooled files, regardless of status or can be conditioned to only include selected files, a date range of files and so on. The time and date of the entry, along with the job, user and output queue associated with the spooled file are shown. You may change, display or send a spooled file as an attachment to a message.

From this display, you have several options. You can change (**Option 2**) the attributes of a spooled file, display (**Option 5**) the contents of a spooled file and send (**Option 7**) a spooled file as an attachment to a message. The required information is automatically entered into the SNDMSGICM command display parameters. For more information on sending a message, refer to Chapter 3.

Send Spooled File - SNDSPLFICM

The Send Spooled File (SNDSPLFICM) command display (**Option 8**) is used to send a spooled file in its entirety to an e-mail address or fax number as an attachment, or split up a spooled file and send each selection as an attachment to different e-mail addresses or fax numbers. A partial send can be accomplished by entering your selection information in the **Selection text** (SLTTXT) parameter. You may also send you spooled file to a fax number.

```
                      Send Spooled File (SNDSPLFICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Spooled file . . . . . > QSYSPRT       Name
Job name . . . . . > QPADEV0009    Name, *
  User . . . . . >   JULIA       Name
  Number . . . . . >   021259      000000-999999
Spooled file number  . . . . . > 0001          Number, *ONLY, *LAST
Selection text . . . . . .   *NONE

Message  . . . . . .   *NONE _____________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________...

Delivery type  . . . . . .   *EMAIL        *EMAIL, *FAX
```

Some important parameters for this command include the following:

- **Spooled file**: The name of the spooled file that you want to send as an attachment to an e-mail address. You may choose to send the entire spooled file to the address, or selections from the spooled file to different addresses.
- **Job name**: The name of the job that created the spooled file.
- **User**: The name of the user from which the spooled file originated.

- **Number**: The system assigned job number of the spooled file.
- **Spooled file number**: The unique number of the spooled file. ***ONLY** indicates that only one spooled file in the job has the specified file name; therefore, the number of the spooled file is not necessary. ***LAST** indicates that if there is more than one spooled file with the specified file name, the one with the highest number is the file that is sent.
- **Selection text**: The text contained within a page of the spooled file that you want to select to send to an e-mail address. For example, you can specify SLTTXT('Account - 01234'), and ICOM400 will select out the pages that contains 'Account - 01234' to send to the e-mail address you have specified. ***NONE** indicates that the entire spooled file will be sent.
- **Message**: The message text that will be sent in the body of the e-mail. **NOTE**: If you specify **&NL** in your message, all the text after **&NL** will appear on the next line of the message. You may specify as many new lines as you wish. **&NL** will not appear in the message text.
- **Delivery type**: The delivery type for the spooled file. You can send your spooled file to an e-mail address (***EMAIL**) or a fax number (***FAX**).
  NOTE: You may specify ***PGM** as a delivery type if you want to let a program you have written determine the delivery type. You must specify the program to be called that will return the email address or fax number. The SNDINF parameter will be used to locate the key information that the program will need to find the email address or fax number. The program must receive two parameters, the first being character with a length of 10 and the second being character with a length of 60. The first parameter will determine what delivery type will be used to send the spooled file, either *EMAIL or *FAX. You must move one of these values into the first parameter being *EMAIL or *FAX. The second parameter contains the key information found in the spooled file but will also return the email address or fax number. The second parameter should return blanks if no email address or fax number is found. Please refer to the following example:

  ==> SNDSPLFICM SPLF(QPINVOICE) JOB(*) SPLNBR(*LAST)
  MSG('Attached is your invoice.') DVYTYP(*PGM)
  PGM(ICOMTOOLS/PGMEXIT) SNDINF(10 3 60).

  Note: If your return delivery type is *FAX and you want a recipient name to be put on the header cover sheet to show who the fax is going to, then you must return a value in the second parameter starting at the 21st position and can be up to 40 characters in length. For example, this value could be a name or fax number. If this value is blank when using *PGM for the delivery type and using *FAX for the return from your program, then the "TO" recipient on your cover sheet will be blank as well.
- **E-mail address**: The e-mail address of the recipient to whom you want to send the spooled file. There are three ways to specify the e-mail address(es).
  1. **E-mail address**: Specify the e-mail address to which you want to send the spooled file. The following is an example of what you would enter on a command line:

     ```
     ==> SNDSPLFICM SPLF(QPINVOICE) JOB(*) SPLNBR(*LAST) MSG('Attached is your
     invoice.') EMAIL(johndoe@domain.com)  ATTACH(Invoice).
     ```

     To send a partial spooled file enter the selection text:

     ```
     ==> SNDSPLFICM SPLF(QPINVOICE) JOB(*) SPLNBR(*LAST) SLTTXT('Account -
     01234') MSG('Attached is your invoice.') EMAIL(johndoe@domain.com)
     ATTACH(Invoice)
     ```

  2. ***SPLF**: Specify the location of the send information (i.e., e-mail address) found on each page of the spooled file. All the pages with the same send information will be sent together. Within the SNDINF parameter, specify the line number, starting position, and length. The following is the command as it would be issued from a command line:

     ```
     ==> SNDSPLFICM SPLF(QPINVOICE) JOB(*) SPLNBR(*LAST) MSG('Attached is your
     invoice.') EMAIL(*SPLF) ATTACH(Invoice) SNDINF(3 10 30).
     ```

In case the line number may not be the same on each page, specify search text that can be used to locate the address. In the SNDINF parameter, specify *TEXT as the line number, *AFTER as the starting position, the length, and the text to search for, such as: 'To:'.

```
==> SNDSPLFICM SPLF(QPINVOICE) JOB(*) SPLNBR(*LAST) MSG('Attached is your
invoice.') EMAIL(*SPLF) ATTACH(Invoice) SNDINF( *TEXT *AFTER 30 'To:' ).
```

3. ***PGM**: Specify the program to be called that will return the e-mail address(es). The SNDINF parameter will be used to locate the key information that the program will need to find the e-mail address. The program must receive two parameters, the first being character with a length of 10 and the second being character with a length of 60. The first parameter is not currently used, but will eventually be the delivery type for the spooled file. The second parameter contains the key information found in the spooled file but will also return the e-mail address. The second parameter should return blanks if no e-mail is needed. Please refer to the following example:

```
==> SNDSPLFICM SPLF(QPINVOICE) JOB(*) SPLNBR(*LAST) MSG('Attached is your
invoice.') EMAIL(*PGM)  ATTACH(Invoice) PGM(ICOMTOOLS/EMAILEXIT) SNDINF(10
3 60).
```

- **Fax information**: The fax number, sender, and recipient to which your spooled file will be sent. The recipient name will appear on the cover letter. See above (**E-mail address**) for more information on retrieving a fax number.
- **Fax header**: Whether or not you want to send the fax header along with your fax.
- **Attach**: The name of the spooled file attachment.
- **Program to retrieve send info**: The program that ICOM/400 will use to retrieve the send information.
- **Send information**: The parameters that you want to use to find the send information (i.e., e-mail addresses) for the spooled file. This includes the line number within the spooled file, the starting position, the length, and the search text. ***TEXT** indicates that you will search text to identify the send information. ***AFTER** indicates that the starting position will be the first character after the located search text.

Option 6 = Work with ICOM/400 e-mail

The Work with Email display shows all e-mail messages that you requested as a result of processing the Work with ICOM/400 Email (WRKMAILICM) command. The e-mail messages are messages sent to the ICOM/400 e-mail address specified on the in the Change System Attributes display. These can be reply messages or returned messages that are a result of an error. The display can contain all messages, regardless of sender or can be conditioned to only include selected messages, a date range of messages and so on. The time and date of the entry, along with the message sender, subject and message text are shown. Option 5 displays the message detail.

```
                              Work with Email
                                                                  3/16/03
17:15:23

 Type options, press Enter.
   4=Remove   5=Display

     Receive   Receive
Opt  Date      Time     Sender                 Subject          Message
    3/10/03   8:31:04  QGATE@mbabky.pinnsys.  UNDELIVERABLE M  NOTABLE TO
DELIVE
    3/10/03   8:31:05  "SkyUser" <skyuser@m  Email Acknowled  Thank you f
    3/10/03   8:31:07  "SkyUser" <skyuser@m  Email Acknowled  Thank you f
```

```
    3/10/03   8:31:09  "SkyUser" <skyuser@m  Email Acknowled  Thank you f
    3/10/03  10:56:58  brianyounger@bellsou  re: <<000000480  ------
<<COOL>
    3/11/03  15:36:32  Brian Younger <brian  Re: test         you know it.
A
```

From this display, you can remove a e-mail message (**Option 4**) or display a message (**Option 5**).

Some important fields on this display include the following:

- **Receive date**: The date that this message was received by the e-mail address.
- **Receive time**: The time that this message was received by the e-mail address.
- **Sender**: The name or e-mail address of the sender of the message.
- **Subject**: The subject of the e-mail message.
- **Message**: The message text of the e-mail message.

Entering a **5** beside a message allows you to display more in-depth information about the message.

```
                              Display Information

   Date received . . . . . . . . . :  3/10/03
   Time received . . . . . . . . . :  8:31:04
   Handle ID/Page ID . . . . . . . : 000000000 / 0000000
   From  . . . . . . . . . . . . . : QGATE@mbabky.pinnsys.com

   Subject . . . . . . . . . . . . : UNDELIVERABLE MAIL
   Message text  . . . . . . . . . : NOTABLE TO DELIVER MAIL TO SOME/ALL RECIPIENT
S.  REPLY CODES WITH FIRST DIGIT = '4' OR '5' ARE ERROR REPLIES.  ERRORS THAT DO
 NOT HAVE ERROR REPLY CODES MAY EXIST.    HOST mbabky NOT ABLE TO DELIVER MAIL T
O FOLLOWING RECIPIENT(S):     <BRIANYOUNGER@BELLSOUTHIPS.COM>  RETRIES EXHAUSTED
 WHILE ATTEMPTING TO CONNECT TO REMOTE HOST BELLSOUTHIPS.                ** TEX
T OF MAIL FOLLOWS **  Received: from pinnsys.com by MBABKY.PINNSYS.COM (IBM
OS/400
 SMTP V03R07M00) with TCP; Tue,  2 Mar 1999 08:44:25 +0000  From: icom@pinnsys.co
m  Subject: ICOM/400 notification  To: ICOM/400 Recipient    does this still wor
k?  .
```

On this display, you can view the date and time the message was received, the Handle ID (for e-mail) or Page ID (for pages) of the sender, the e-mail address of the sender, the subject of the message and the message text.

Option 8 = Start ICOM/400 subsystem

Select this option to start the ICOM/400 subsystem, ZICOM400

Option 9 = End ICOM/400 subsystem

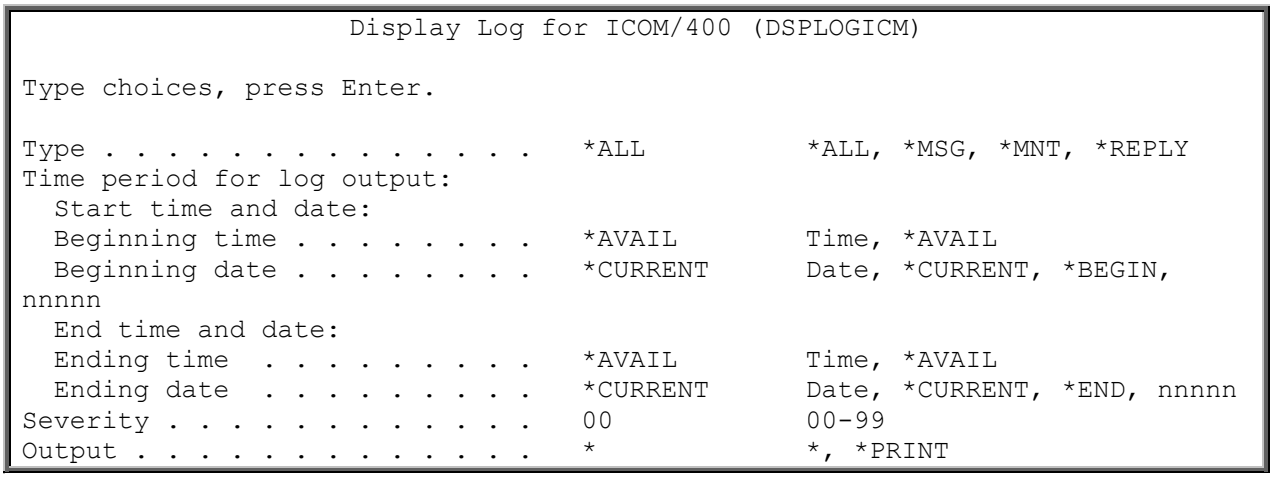
Select this option to end the ICOM/400 subsystem, ZICOM400.

Chapter 10
ICOM/400 Commands

This chapter contains a listing of the various commands available in ICOM/400 previously not mentioned in the manual. Those commands include:

DSPLOGICM	Display ICOM/400 log entries
DSPMSGICM	Display ICOM/400 message IDs
ENDMSGQICM	End message queue monitor
HLDMONICM	Hold monitor using ICM
HLDMSGQICM	Hold message queue monitor
MONMSGQICM	Monitor message queue
RLSMONICM	Release monitor using ICM
RLSMSGQICM	Release message queue monitor
RMVATVICM	Remove ICOM/400 activity
RMVHSTICM	Remove ICOM/400 history
RMVLOGEICM	Remove log entries using ICM
SNDICM	Send using ICOM/400
SNDMSGICM	Send message using ICOM/400
SNDSPLFICM	Send spooled file using ICOM/400
WRKACTICM	Work with Actions using ICM
WRKCMPICM	Work with pager companies using ICM
WRKESCICM	Work with escalation tables using ICM
WRKGRPICM	Work with recipient groups using ICM
WRKMSGICM	Work with pre-defined messages
WRKMAILICM	Work with ICOM/400 e-mail
WRKPAGICM	Work with pages using ICM
WRKPAGQICM	Work with page queues using ICM
WRKRCPICM	Work with recipients using ICM
WRKSCDICM	Work with schedules using ICM
WRKSPLFICM	Work with spooled files using ICM

Display ICOM/400 Log Entries (DSPLOGICM)



```
                    Display Log for ICOM/400 (DSPLOGICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Type . . . . . .   *ALL          *ALL, *MSG, *MNT, *REPLY
Time period for log output:
  Start time and date:
  Beginning time . . . . . .   *AVAIL        Time, *AVAIL
  Beginning date . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN,
nnnnn
  End time and date:
  Ending time  . . . . . .   *AVAIL        Time, *AVAIL
  Ending date  . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn
Severity . . . . . .   00           00-99
Output . . . . . .   *              *, *PRINT
```

The Display Log for ICM (DSPLOGICM) command allows you to display the ICOM/400 log. The ICOM/400 log is a display by date and time of messages that ICM has created because of processing. The DSPLOGICM command allows you to display or print all or part of the log.

The parameters for this display include the following:

Type (TYPE)

The type of entry for which you want to review log entries.

***ALL**: Selects all log entries for display.

***MSG:** Selects only message log entries for display.

***MNT:** Selects only maintenance log entries for display.

***REPLY**: Selects only reply log entries for display

Time period for log output (PERIOD)

Specifies the period of time for which the log entries are selected for the display or report. This parameter contains two lists of two elements each.

Element 1: Beginning time

One of the following is used to specify the beginning creation time at which or after log entries are included. Any log entries created before the specified time and date are not included in the display or report.

***AVAIL:** Any time that is available for the beginning date is included.

begin-time: Specify the beginning time for the specified beginning date that indicates which log entries are to be included.

The time is specified in 24-hour format and can be specified with or without a time separator:

- Without a time separator, specify a string of 4 digits (hhmm) where hh=hours and mm=minutes. Hours and minutes must each be exactly 2 digits (using leading zeros if necessary).
- With a time separator, specify a string of 5 digits where the time separator specified for your job is used to separate the hours, minutes, and seconds. If you enter this command from the command line, the string must be enclosed in apostrophes. If a time separator other than the separator specified for your job is used, this command will fail.

Element 2: Beginning date

One of the following is used to specify the beginning date on or after which the log entries were made. Any entries prior to the specified date are not included in the display or report.

***CURRENT**: Log entries with a current date creation date and between the specified beginning and ending times (if specified) are included.

***BEGIN**: Log entries from the beginning of the log entries are included.

begin-date: Specify the beginning date. The date must be specified in the job date format.

number-of-days: Specify a number to represent the number of days before the current date that you want to use for the search. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/12/03 (date format is mm/dd/yy), the Begin date for the ICOM/400 log would be 3/2/03.

Element 3: Ending time

One of the following is used to specify the ending time before which log entries are included. Any items created after the specified time and date are not included in the log entries for the display or report.

***AVAIL**: Any time that is available for the ending date is included.

end-time: Specify the ending time for the specified ending date that indicates which log entries are to be included.

Element 4: Ending date

One of the following is used to specify the ending date on which or before which the log entries must have been made. Any log entries made after the specified date are not included in the display or report.

***CURRENT**: Log entries whose date is on or before the current date are included in the display or report.

***END:** The log entries to the end of the log information are included in the display or report.

end-date: Specify the ending date. The date must be specified in the job date format.

number-of-days: Specify a number to represent the number of days before the current date that you want to use for the search. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/22/03 (date format is mm/dd/yy), the End date for the ICOM/400 log would be 3/12/03.

Severity (SEV)

Specify the message severity level that you want to include in the report/display. For example, a severity level of 30 would include all messages that are severity level 30 and above. The severity level can be specified from 0 to 99.

Output (OUTPUT)

Use the following values to specify whether log messages are to be shown on the ICM log display, or be printed.

*****: Displays the ICOM/400 log.

***PRINT**: Prints the ICOM/400 log.

Detail (DETAIL)

Specifies the format used for the printed output.

***BASIC:** The entries are printed in abbreviated list format.

***FULL:** The detail of each entry is printed in an expanded format.

User (USER)

Specifies the name of the user profile for the log entries that you want to display or print.

***ALL**: Include all user profiles in the display or report.

user-name: Specify the user profile whose log entries you want to include in the display or report.

Message identifier (MSGID)

Specifies the message identifier for the log entries that you want to display or print.

***ALL**: Include all message identifiers in the display or report.

message-identifier: Specify the message identifier whose log entries you want to include in the display or report.

Display Message Queue (DSPMSGICM)

```
                    Display Message Queue  (DSPMSGICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Message queue  . . . . . .   QSYSOPR       Name
  Library  . . . . . .         *LIBL       Name, *LIBL
Time period for output:
  Start time and date:
  Beginning time . . . . . .   *AVAIL       Time, *AVAIL
  Beginning date . . . . . .   *CURRENT     Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN,
nnnnn
  End time and date:
  Ending time  . . . . . .     *AVAIL       Time, *AVAIL
```

```
  Ending date  . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn
Message ID . . . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, *ALL
             + for more values
Message type . . . . . . .   *ALL          *ALL, *INFO, *INQ, *COMP...
Exclude Message ID . . . . .   *NONE        Name, *NONE
             + for more values
Severity . . . . . . . . . .   00           00-99
Output . . . . . . . . . . .   *            *, *PRINT
```

The Display Message Queue (DSPMSGICM) command allows you to display the messages within a message queue using ICOM/400. A summary form of the messages is displayed or printed. The DSPMSGICM command allows you to display or print all or part of the queue.

The parameters for this display include the following:

Message queue (MSGQ)

Specifies the message queue you want to display and the library which contains the message queue.

message-queue: Specify the name of the message queue you want to display.

***LIBL:** The library is a member of your library list.

***CURLIB**: You want to use the current library.

library-name: Specify the name of the library of your message queue.

Time period for log output (PERIOD)

Specifies the period of time for which the messages are selected for the display or report. This parameter contains two lists of two elements each.

Element 1: Beginning time

One of the following is used to specify the beginning creation time at which or after messages are included. Any messages created before the specified time and date are not included in the display or report.

***AVAIL:** Any time that is available for the beginning date is included.

begin-time: Specify the beginning time for the specified beginning date that indicates messages are to be included.

The time is specified in 24-hour format and can be specified with or without a time separator:

- Without a time separator, specify a string of 4 digits (hhmm) where hh=hours and mm=minutes. Hours and minutes must each be exactly 2 digits (using leading zeros if necessary).
- With a time separator, specify a string of 5 digits where the time separator specified for your job is used to separate the hours, minutes, and seconds. If you enter this command from the command line, the string must be enclosed in apostrophes. If a time separator other than the separator specified for your job is used, this command will fail.

Element 2: Beginning date

One of the following is used to specify the beginning date on or after which the messages were made. Any messages created prior to the specified date are not included in the display or report.

***CURRENT**: Messages with a current date creation date and between the specified beginning and ending times (if specified) are included.

***BEGIN**: Messages from the beginning of the message queue are included.

begin-date: Specify the beginning date. The date must be specified in the job date format.

number-of-days: Specify a number to represent the number of days before the current date that you want to use for the search. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/12/03 (date format is mm/dd/yy), the Begin date for the ICOM/400 log would be 3/2/03.

Element 3: Ending time

One of the following is used to specify the ending time before which messages are included. Any items created after the specified time and date are not included for the display or report.

***AVAIL**: Any time that is available for the ending date is included.

end-time: Specify the ending time for the specified ending date that indicates which messages are to be included.

Element 4: Ending date

One of the following is used to specify the ending date on which or before which the messages must have been made. Any messages made after the specified date are not included in the display or report.

***CURRENT**: Messages whose date is on or before the current date are included in the display or report.

***END:** The messages to the end of the message queue information are included in the display or report.

end-date: Specify the ending date. The date must be specified in the job date format.

number-of-days: Specify a number to represent the number of days before the current date that you want to use for the search. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/22/03 (date format is mm/dd/yy), the End date for the ICOM/400 log would be 3/12/03.

Message ID (MSGID)

Specifies the message identifier for the messages that you want to display or print.

***ALL**: Include all message identifiers in the display or report.

message-identifier: Specify the message identifier whose messages you want to include in the display or report.

Message type (MSGTYPE)

Specify the message type that you want to include in the report/display.

***ALL**: Include all message types in the display or report.

***INFO:** Include only informational messages.

***INQ**: Include only inquiry messages.

***COMP:** Include only completion messages. A completion message indicates the status of the work that is successfully performed.

***DIAG:** Include only diagnostic messages. Diagnostic messages provide information about errors detected by this program.

***ESCAPE:** Include only escape messages. An escape message describes an irrecoverable error condition. The sending program does not continue to run.

Exclude message ID (EXCID)

Specifies that you want to exclude the message IDs from the message queue information that you want to display or print.

You can enter multiple values for this parameter. If you are on an entry display and you need additional entry fields to enter multiple message ID exclusions, type a plus sign (+) in the entry field opposite the phrase "+ for more values", and press the Enter key.

***NONE:** You do not want to exclude any of the message IDs from the message queue information that you want to display or print.

message-name: Specify the name of the message IDs which you want to exclude

Severity (SEV)

Specify the message severity level that you want to include in the report/display. For example, a severity level of 30 would include all messages that are severity level 30 and above. The severity level can be specified from 0 to 99.

Output (OUTPUT)

Specify whether messages are to be displayed at the requesting work station, or to be printed with the job's spooled output.

*****: The output is displayed.

***PRINT**: The output is printed.

Detail (DETAIL)

Specifies the format used for the printed output.

***BASIC:** The entries are printed in abbreviated list format.

***FULL:** The detail of each entry is printed in an expanded format.

End Message Queue Monitor (ENDMSGQICM)

The command stops the message queue monitor started by MONMSGQICM.

The parameters for the ENDMSGQICM command are listed below:

Message queue (MSGQ)

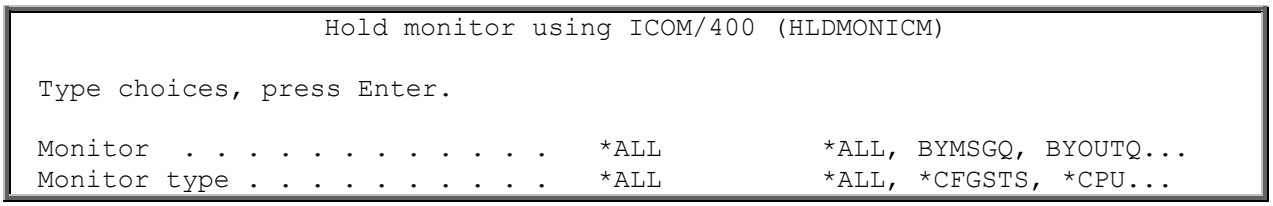
Specifies the message queue you are monitoring, as well as the library which contains the message queue.

message-queue: Specify the message queue that you want to end monitoring.

***LIBL**: The library is contained in your library list.

library-name: Specifies the name of the library which contains your message queue.

Hold Monitor using ICOM/400 (HLDMONICM)



The Hold Monitor using ICOM/400 (HLDMONICM) command allows you to temporarily pause a monitor from executing.

The parameters for this command are listed below:

Monitor (MON)

Specifies the monitor which you would like to hold.

***ALL**: You would like to hold all monitors.

monitor-name: Specifies the name of the monitor you would like to hold.

Monitor type (MONTYP)

Specifies the type of monitor which you would like to hold.

***ALL**: You would like to hold all types of monitors.

***CPU**: You would like to hold a CPU monitor.

***CFGSTS**: You would like to hold a configuration status monitor.

***JOB**: You would like to hold a job monitor.

***JOBQ**: You would like to hold a job queue monitor.

***MSGQ**: You would like to hold a message queue monitor.

***NETF**: You would like to hold a network file monitor.

***OBJSIZ**: You would like to hold an object size monitor.

***OUTQ**: You would like to hold an output queue monitor.

***QHST**: You would like to hold a QHST monitor.

***RMTDEV**: You would like to hold a remote device monitor.

***SPLF**: You would like to hold a spooled file monitor.

***SBS**: You would like to hold a subsystem monitor.

***USRDFN**: You would like to hold a user-defined monitor.

Hold Message Queue Monitor (HLDMSGQICM)

```
                  Hold Message Queue Monitor (HLDMSGQICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Message queue  . . . . . .                  Name, *ALL
```

The Hold Message Queue (HLDMSGQICM) command allows you to hold all or specific message queue monitors.

Message queue (MSGQ)

Specify the message queue monitor to hold or that you want to hold all message queues monitors.

***ALL:** Hold all message queues.

message-queue-name: Specify the name of the message queue that you want to hold.

Monitor Message Queue (MONMSGQICM)

```
                  Monitor Message Queue (MONMSGQICM)

 Type choices, press Enter.

 Message queue  . . . . . .                  Name
   Library  . . . . . .        *LIBL         Name, *LIBL, *CURLIB
 Monitor  . . . . . .                        BYMSGQ, LBSMSGQ, MYMSGQ...
```

The Monitor Message Queue (MONMSGQICM) allows you to monitor a message queue while your system is in a restricted state. **NOTE**: If you issue this command before the system is in a restricted

state, and you have monitors running in ICOM/400, you may receive two messages in response to the same message from a message queue.

Message queue (MSGQ)

Specifies the message queue that you want to monitor.

m*essage-queue-name:* The name of the message queue you want to monitor.

Library (LIB)

Specifies the library which contains the message queue you want to monitor.

***LIBL**: The message queue is contained in a member of your library list.

library-name: Specify the name of the library which contains the message queue.

Monitor (MON)

Specifies the monitor you want to use to monitor the message queue.

monitor-name: Specifies the name of the monitor you want to use to monitor the message queue.

Release Monitor using ICOM/400 (RLSMONICM)

```
                Release monitor using ICOM/400 (RLSMONICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Monitor  . . . . . .   *ALL          *ALL, BYMSGQ, BYOUTQ...
Monitor type . . . . . .   *ALL          *ALL, *CFGSTS, *CPU...
```

The Release Monitor using ICM (RLSMONICM) allows you to release a monitor that has previously been held.

Monitor (MON)

Specifies the monitor which you would like to release.

***ALL**: You would like to release all monitors.

monitor-name: Specifies the name of the monitor you would like to release.

Monitor type (MONTYP)

Specifies the type of monitor which you would like to release.

***ALL**: You would like to release all monitor types.

***CPU**: You would like to release a CPU monitor.

***CFGSTS**: You would like to release a configuration status monitor.

***JOB**: You would like to release a job monitor.

***JOBQ:** You would like to release a job queue monitor.

***MSGQ**: You would like to release a message queue monitor.

***NETF**: You would like to release a network file monitor.

***OBJSIZ**: You would like to release an object size monitor.

***OUTQ**: You would like to release an output queue monitor.

***QHST**: You would like to release a QHST monitor.

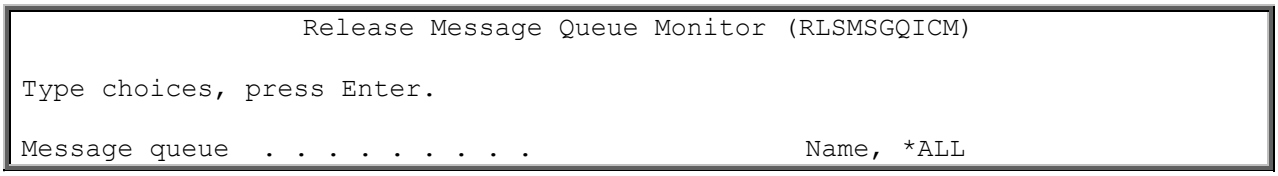
***RMTDEV**: You would like to release a remote device monitor.

***SPLF**: You would like to release a spooled file monitor.

***SBS**: You would like to release a subsystem monitor.

***USRDFN**: You would like to release a user-defined monitor.

Release Message Queue Monitor (RLSMSGQICM)



The Release Message Queue (RLSMSGQICM) command allows you to release all or specific message queue monitors.

Message queue (MSGQ)

Specify the message queue monitor to release or that you want to release all message queue monitors.

***ALL**: Release all message queue monitors.

message-queue-name: Specify the name of the message queue monitor that you want to release.

Remove ICOM/400 Activity (RMVATVICM)

```
                    Remove ICOM/400 Activity (RMVATVICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

From date  . . . . . . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn
To date  . . . . . . . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, nnnnn
```

The Remove ICOM/400 Activity (RMVATVICM) command allows to you to remove activity that occurred between the dates you specify.

From date (FROMDATE)

Specifies the beginning date that you want to use when removing ICOM/400 activity entries. The From date is the beginning point in the ICOM/400 activity that is cleared.

***CURRENT**: The current date is used as the beginning point of the date range.

***BEGIN**: The earliest ICOM/400 activity entry date in the file is used as the beginning date in the date range.

date: Specifies the date entered in system format with or without date separators, that is, 12/23/03 or 122303, that you want to be the beginning date of the date range.

nnnnn: Specifies a number to represent the number of days before the current day that you want to remove. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/12/03, the From date would be 3/2/03.

To date (TODATE)

Specify the ending date that you want to use when removing ICOM/400 activity entries. The To date is the ending point in the ICOM/400 activity that is cleared.

***CURRENT**: The current date is used as the ending date of the date range.

***END**: The last ICOM/400 activity entry date in the file is used as the ending date in the date range.

date: Specifies the date in system format with or without date separators, that is, 2/23/03 or 22303, that you want to use as the ending date of the date range.

Remove ICOM/400 History (RMVHSTICM)

```
                    Remove ICOM/400 History (RMVHSTICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Company  . . . . . .  *ALL          Name, *ALL
Recipient  . . . . . .  *ALL        Name, *ALL, *NONE
Recipient Group  . . . . . .  *ALL  Name, *ALL
From date  . . . . . .  *CURRENT    Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn
To date  . . . . . .  *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, nnnnn
Entry status . . . . . .  *ALL      *ALL, *SENT, *PEND, *ERROR...
Escalation status  . . . . . .  *ALL  *ALL, *ESCING, *ACKD...
```

The Remove ICOM/400 History (RMVHSTICM) command allows you to clear the ICOM/400 history based on parameters that you specify.

Company (CMP)

Specifies the name of the company or all companies for which you want to remove history entries.

***ALL**: You want to remove history entries for all companies that meet the other specified criteria.

company-name: Specify the name of the company for which you want to remove history entries.

Recipient (RCP)

Specifies the name of the recipient or all recipients for which you want to remove history entries.

***ALL**: You want to remove history entries for all recipients that meet the other specified criteria.

recipient-name: Specify the name of the recipient for which you want to remove history entries.

Recipient group (GRP)

Specifies the name of the recipient group or all groups for which you want to remove history entries.

***ALL**: You want to remove history entries for all groups that meet the other specified criteria.

group-name: Specify the name of the group for which you want to remove history entries.

From date (FROMDATE)

Specifies the beginning date that you want to use when removing ICOM/400 history entries. The From date is the beginning point in the ICOM/400 history that is cleared.

***CURRENT**: The current date is used as the beginning point of the date range.

***BEGIN**: The earliest entry date in the file is used as the beginning date in the date range.

date: Specifies the date entered in system format with or without date separators, that is, 12/23/03 or 122303, that you want to be the beginning date of the date range.

nnnnn: Specifies a number to represent the number of days before the current day that you want to remove. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/12/03, the From date would be 3/2/03.

To date (TODATE)

Specify the ending date that you want to use when removing ICOM/400 history entries. The To date is the ending point in the ICOM/400 history that is cleared.

***CURRENT**: The current date is used as the ending date of the date range.

***END**: The last entry date in the file is used as the ending date in the date range.

date: Specifies the date in system format with or without date separators, that is, 12/23/03 or 122303, that you want to use as the ending date of the date range.

nnnnn: Specifies a number to represent the number of days before the current day that you want to clear. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/22/03, the To date would be 3/12/03.

Entry status (STATUS)

Specifies the status of the history entries that you want to remove.

***ALL**: You want to remove history entries for all status special values that meet the other specified criteria.

***SENT**: Remove history entries with a status code of *SENT.

***PEND**: Remove history entries with a status code of *PEND.

***ERROR**: Remove history entries with a status code of *ERROR.

***HELD**: Remove history entries with a status code of *HELD.

***SCHED**: Remove history entries with a status code of *SCHED.

***READY**: Remove history entries with a status code of *READY.

Escalation status (ESCSTS)

Specifies the escalation status of the history entries that you want to remove.

***ALL**: You want to remove history entries for all escalation status special values that meet the other specified criteria.

***ESCING**: Remove history entries with a escalation status code of *ESCING.

***ACKD**: Remove history entries with a escalation status code of *ACKD.

***ESCD**: Remove history entries with a escalation status code of *ESCD.

***EXPD**: Remove history entries with a escalation status code of *EXPD.

***NONE**: Remove history entries with a escalation status code of *NONE.

Remove Log Entries using ICOM/400 (RMVLOGEICM)

```
                    Remove ICOM/400 Log Entries (RMVLOGEICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Type . . . . . .   *ALL          *ALL, *MSG, *MNT
From date  . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn
To date  . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, nnnnn
```

The Remove Log Entries from ICM (RMVLOGEICM) command allows you to clear the ICOM/400 log based on a date range that you specify.

Type (TYPE)

Specifies the type of entries that you want to clear from the ICM log. Examples of types of entries are messages and maintenance.

***ALL**: Selects all log entries to clear within the specified date range.

***MSG**: Selects only message log entries to clear within the specified date range.

***MNT**: Selects only maintenance log entries to clear within the specified date range.

From date (FROMDATE)

Specifies the beginning date that you want to use when clearing the ICOM/400 log. The From date is the beginning point in the ICOM/400 log that is cleared.

***CURRENT**: The current date is used as the beginning point of the date range.

date: Specifies the date entered in system format with or without date separators, that is, 12/23/03 or 122303, that you want to be the beginning date of the date range.

nnnnn: Specifies a number to represent the number of days before the current day that you want to clear. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/12/03, the From date would be 3/2/03.

To date (TODATE)

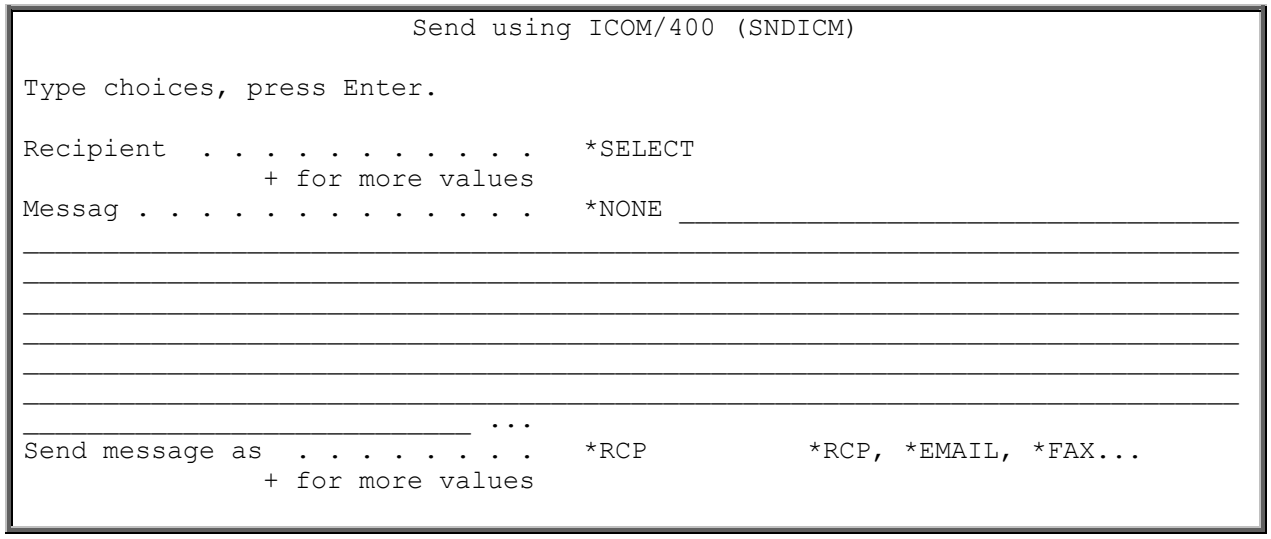
Specify the ending date that you want to use when clearing the ICOM/400 log. The To date is the ending point in the ICOM/400 log that is cleared.

***CURRENT**: The current date is used as the ending date of the date range.

*date: S*pecifies the date in system format with or without date separators, that is, 12/23/03 or 122303, that you want to be the ending date a range of dates.

nnnnn: Specifies a number to represent the number of days before the current day that you want to clear. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/22/03, the To date would be 3/12/03.

Send using ICOM/400 (SNDICM)



The Send using ICM (SNDICM) command is used to send a message to a single recipient or multiple recipients. You can schedule the SNDICM command through a job scheduler if you want the message to be sent at a particular time or as a result of a job running. A typical use of the SNDICM within a job scheduler would be to send a message indicating the successful or unsuccessful completion of a job or series of jobs.

Recipient (RCP)

Specifies the name of the recipient to which you want to send the message.

You can enter multiple values for this parameter. If you are on an entry display and you need additional entry fields to enter multiple recipients, type a plus sign (+) in the entry field opposite the phrase "+ for more values", and press the Enter key.

If you need to choose a recipient name from a list of names, specify *SELECT to select one or more recipients, or press F4 to prompt for a list.

***SELECT**: A list is displayed for selection of one or more recipients without having to type each recipient name individually. If the message to be sent has alphabetic characters, the list will not contain any recipients with digital only pagers.

***ALL**: The message is to be sent to all recipients.

recipient-name: Specify the name of the recipient that is to receive the message.

Message (MSG)

Specify the message that you want to send. Messages can be entered that are up to 999 characters in length. In most cases, pager and other equipment cannot handle this many characters. For example, the maximum message length that a pager company allows is specified in the **Maximum message length** field in the Work with Pager Company display. Whatever length is specified will be used to break up the message you enter here into multiple messages that are sent to your equipment.

ICOM/400 also allows you to send pre-defined messages. These are defined on the Work with Pre-Defined Messages display. You can enter the identifier of the pre-defined message in the message field to send any pre-defined message.

message: Specify a message that you want to send.

phone-number: Specify additional numbers to be used with the phone number specified within the recipient or the Phone field.

***NONE**: You do not want to send a message. You are ringing a phone. The phone number that you want to use is retrieved from the recipient.

Send message as (DVYTYP)

Specify the type of delivery you would like to use for the message.

You can enter multiple values for this parameter. If you are on an entry display and you need additional entry fields to enter multiple delivery types, type a plus sign (+) in the entry field opposite the phrase "+ for more values", and press the Enter key.

***RCP**: You want to send the message to all the delivery types already assigned to that recipient.

***EMAIL**: You want to send the message to the e-mail addresses that have been defined for that recipient.

> **Note**: When you want to send a notification using e-mail, a default subject will automatically be applied to the message. If you wish to change the subject, enter a new subject within the first 32 characters of the message in the **Message** field, @@, and then the body of the message. An example would be: 'Subject: Meeting @@ Sales meeting at 2pm', where "Subject: Meeting" is the new subject and "Sales meeting at 2pm" is the message. Otherwise, a default subject of "ICOM/400 Notification" will be applied.

***MSGQ**: You want to send the message to the message queues that have been defined for that recipient.

***PAGER**: You want to send the message to the pagers that have been defined for that recipient.

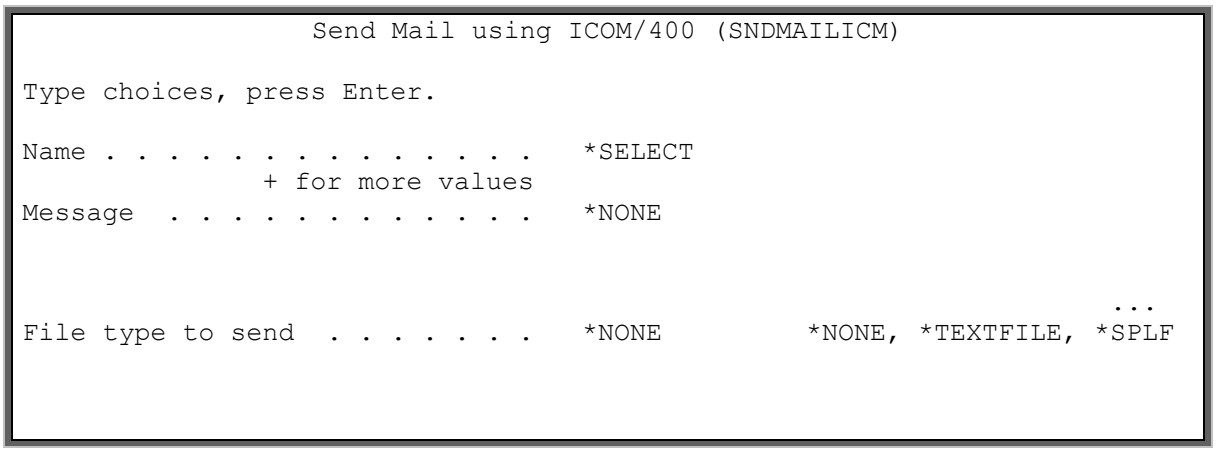
***PHONE**: You want to dial the telephone numbers that have been defined for that recipient.

***FAX**: You want to send the message to the fax numbers that have been defined for that recipient.

***SPLF**: You want to send the message to the output queues that have been defined for that recipient.

***NETMSG**: You want to send the message to a message queue on a remote system that has been defined for this recipient.

Send Message using ICOM/400



The Send Mail using ICOM/400 (SNDMAILICM) command is used to send a email message to a single recipient, a group of recipients or multiple groups of recipients.

You can schedule the SNDMAILICM command through a job scheduler if you want the message to be sent at a particular time or as a result of a job running. A typical use of the SNDMAILICM within a job scheduler would be to send a message indicating the successful or unsuccessful completion of a job or series of jobs.

Name (NAME)

Specifies the name of the recipient or group to which you want to send the message.

You can enter multiple values for this parameter. If you are on an entry display and you need additional entry fields to enter multiple recipients, type a plus sign (+) in the entry field opposite the phrase "+ for more values", and press the Enter key.

If you need to choose a recipient name or recipient group name from a list of names, specify *SELECT to select one or more recipients.

***SELECT:** A list is displayed for selection of one or more recipients without having to type each recipient name individually.

***NONE:** The message will not be sent to a recipient. If *NONE is selected, the **E-mail** field will be used.

***ALL:** The message is to be sent to all recipients or all groups, depending on the value in the Send type prompt.

recipient-name: Specify the name of the recipient or recipient group that is to receive the message.

Message (MSG)

Specify the message that you want to send. Messages can be entered that are up to 999 characters in length.

ICOM/400 also allows you to send pre-defined messages. These are defined on the Work with Pre-Defined Messages display. You can enter the identifier of the pre-defined message in the message field to send any pre-defined message.

Note: Since you are sending an e-mail message, you may specify **&NL** to start a new line. All text appearing after **&NL** will appear on the next line of the message. **&NL** will not appear in the message.

***NONE:** You do not want to send a message. This is possible if you just want to attach a file to be sent to an e-mail address and you don't want any text in the body of the e-mail message.

message: Specify a message that you want to send.

File type to send (FILTYP)

Specifies if you want to send a file as an attachment.

***NONE**: You do not want to attach a file to the message.

***TEXTFILE:** You want to attach a textfile to the message.

***SPLF:** You want to attach a spooled file to the message.

Note: The file is attached to an e-mail, the message text is sent as the body of the e-mail message, while the file is sent as an attachment to the message.

File (FILE)

Specify the text file that you want to attach to the message.

file-name: Specify the name of the text file that you want to attach to the message.

***LIBL:** Your library list is used to locate the text file.

***CURLIB:** The current library is used to locate the text file. If no current library is specified, QGPL is used.

library-name: Specify the library name which contains the text file.

Member (MBR)

Specifies the member in the file associated with the text file.

***FIRST:** The first member of the file is used to locate the text file.

member-name: Specify the name of the member associated with the text file.

Spooled file (SPLF)

Specifies the spooled file that you want to attach to the message.

spooled-file-name: Specify the name of the spooled file that you want to attach to the message.

Job name (JOB)

Specifies the name of the job that created the spooled file you want to attach to the message.

***:** The job that created the spooled file issued this command.

job-name: Specify the name of the job that contains the spooled file.

user-name: Specify the user name that identifies the user profile under which the job is run.

job-number: Specify the system-assigned job number.

Spooled file number (SPLNBR)

Specifies the unique number of spooled file in a job.

***ONLY:** Only one spooled file in the job has the specified file name; therefore, the number of the spooled file is not necessary.

***LAST:** If there is more than one spooled file with the specified file name, the one with the highest number is the spooled file that you want to attach to the message.

spooled-file-number: Specify the number of the spooled file that matches the file name that you want to attach to the message.

Send type (TYPE)

Specify whether the message is to be sent to a single recipient or a group of recipients.

***RCP:** The message is to be sent to a recipient or all recipients, depending on the value specified in the Name prompt.

***GRP:** The message is to be sent to a group or all recipient groups, depending on the value specified in the Name prompt.

Email address (EMAIL)

Specifies the e-mail address to which you want to send this message.

***NONE**: You are using a recipient name on the Name prompt that has an ***EMAIL** delivery type.

email-address: Specify the address of the person(s) to whom you are sending the message.

Return e-mail address (RTNEMAIL)

Specifies an e-mail address to which error and reply messages are sent.

***ICMDFT:** The value for the return e-mail is found in the ICOM/400 defaults.

e-mail-address: Specify the return e-mail address.

Send Message using ICOM/400

See Chapter 3 for details on sending a message using ICOM/400.

Send Spooled File (SNDSPLFICM)

See Chapter 9 for details on sending a spooled file using ICOM/400.

Work with Actions using ICOM/400 (WRKACTICM)

This command allows you to work with all Actions defined in ICOM/400. This command takes you directly to the Work with Actions display. There are no parameters to enter or display. This display is reached by typing WRKACTICM on the command line and pressing F4.

Work with Pager Companies using ICOM/400 (WRKCMPICM)

```
                    Work with Pager Companies (WRKCMPICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Output . . . . . .   *             *, *PRINT
```

The Work with Pager Companies (WRKCMPICM) command allows you to work with all or selected pager companies by taking you to the Work with Pager Companies display. From there you can add, remove, change, copy or display pager company information. Output can be a display or printed report. You may reach this screen by typing WRKCMPICM on the command line and pressing F4.

Output (OUTPUT)

Use the following values to specify whether pager companies are to be shown on the Work with Pager Companies display, or printed.

*****: Displays the Work with Pager Companies display.

***PRINT**: Prints the Work with Pager Companies report.

Work with Escalation Tables using ICOM/400 (WRKESCICM)

```
                  Work with Escalation Tables (WRKESCICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Output . . . . . .   *             *, *PRINT
```

The Work with Escalation Tables (WRKESCICM) command allows you to work with all or escalation lists that you have set up by taking you to the Work with Escalation Tables display. From there you can add, remove, change, copy or display escalation information. Output can be a display or printed report. You may reach this screen by typing WRKESCICM on the command line and pressing F4.

Output (OUTPUT)

Use the following values to specify whether escalation tables are to be shown on the Work with Escalation Tables display, or printed.

*****: Displays the Work with Escalation Tables display.

***PRINT**: Prints the Work with Escalation Tables report.

Work with Recipient Groups using ICOM/400 (WRKGRPICM)

```
                  Work with Recipient Groups (WRKGRPICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Output . . . . . .   *             *, *PRINT
```

The Work with Recipient Groups (WRKGRPICM) command allows you to work with all or selected recipient groups by taking you to the Work with Recipient Groups display. From there you can add, remove, change, copy or display recipient group information. Output can be a display or printed report. You may reach this screen by typing WRKGRPICM on the command line and pressing F4.

Output (OUTPUT)

Use the following values to specify whether recipient groups are to be shown on the Work with Recipient Groups display, or printed.

*****: Displays the Work with Recipient Groups display.

***PRINT**: Prints the Work with Recipient Groups report.

Work with ICOM/400 E-mail (WRKMAILICM)

```
                  Work with ICOM/400 Email (WRKMAILICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Sender . . . . . .   *ALL

From date  . . . . . .   *BEGIN        Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN
To date  . . . . . .   *END          Date, *CURRENT, *END
Sequence option  . . . . . .   *DATE         *DATE, *SENDER
Entries to be displayed first  .   *LAST         *FIRST, *LAST
```

The Work with ICOM/400 Email (WRKMAILICM) command display allows you to display all the mail that ICOM/400 receives from the e-mail address that is specified in the ICOM/400 e-mail address field on the Change System Attributes display. This may be returned mail due to an invalid e-mail address, mail that is received as a result of a reply by a user to an e-mail or page sent by ICOM/400. When you press Enter, you are taken to the Work with ICOM/400 Email display.

Sender (SENDER)

Specifies the user ID of the person(s) who have sent an e-mail message to the ICOM/400 e-mail address.

***NONE**: List the e-mail messages from all senders on the Work with ICOM/400 Email display.

sender: Specify the user ID of the sender whose e-mail you want to list on the Work with ICOM/400 Email display.

From date (FROMDATE)

Specifies the beginning date that you want to use when listing email. The From date is the beginning of a date range of email.

***BEGIN**: The earliest mail date on the file is the beginning date of a date range.

***CURRENT**: The current date is the beginning date of a date range.

date: Enter the date in job format with or without date separators, that is, 12/23/03 or 122303, that you want to be the beginning date of a date range.

nnnnn: Specify a number to represent the number of days before the current day that you want to use for the search. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/12/03, the From date for the mail would be 3/2/03.

To date (TODATE)

Specifies the ending date that you want to use when displaying e-mail. The To date is the ending limit of a date range of mail.

***END**: The latest date in the ICOM/400 file is used as the ending date in the date range.

***CURRENT**: The current date is the ending date of the date range.

date: Specifies the date in job format with or without date separators, that is, 12/23/03 or 122303, that you want to be the ending date of a date range.

nnnnn: Specifies a number to represent the number of days before the current day that you want to use for the search. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/22/03, the To date for the mail would be 3/12/03.

Sequence option (SEQOPT)

Specifies the order in which you want to display or report the entries that you have selected.

***DATE**: You want to display the selected entries in date order.

***SENDER**: You want to display the selected entries in sender order.

Entries to be displayed first (START)

Specifies whether you want to display your selected entries started from the top or bottom based on the value specified in the Sequence option prompt.

***LAST**: You want to display the entries you selected starting from the bottom.

***FIRST**: You want to display the selected entries starting from the top.

Work with Pre-defined Messages using ICOM/400 (WRKMSGICM)

```
                Work with Pre-defined Messages (WRKMSGICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Output . . . . . .   *             *, *PRINT
```

The Work with Pre-defined Messages (WRKMSGICM) command allows you to work with all or selected pre-defined messages by taking you to the Work with Pre-defined Messages display. From there you can add, remove, change, copy or display message information. Output can be a display or printed report. You may reach this screen by typing WRKMSGICM on the command line and pressing F4.

Output (OUTPUT)

Use the following values to specify whether pre-defined messages are to be shown on the Work with Pre-defined Messages display, or printed.

*****: Displays the Work with Pre-defined Messages display.

***PRINT**: Prints the Work with Pre-defined Messages report.

Work with Pages using ICOM/400 (WRKPAGICM)

```
                  Work with Pages using ICOM/400 (WRKPAGICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Company  . . . . . .  *ALL          Name, generic*, *ALL
Recipient  . . . . . .  *ALL        Name, generic*, *ALL
Recipient Group  . . . . . .  *ALL  Name, generic*, *ALL
From date  . . . . . .  *BEGIN      Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn
To date  . . . . . .  *END           Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn
Page status  . . . . . .  *ALL      *ALL, *SENT, *PEND, *ERROR...
Escalation status  . . . . . .  *ALL  *ALL, *ESCING, *ACKD...
Job name . . . . . .  *ALL          Name, generic*, *CURRENT...
User . . . . . .  *ALL              Name, generic*, *CURRENT...
Message text . . . . . .  *ALL
Sequence option  . . . . . .  *DATE  *DATE, *RCP, *GRP
Entries to be displayed first  .  *LAST  *FIRST, *LAST
Output . . . . . .  *               *, *PRINT
```

The Work with Pages ICM (WRKPAGICM) command allows you to work with pages for selected companies, recipients, recipient groups, date ranges in various sort sequences. Output can be a display or printed report.

You may reach this screen by typing WRKPAGICM on the command line and pressing F4.

Company (CMP)

Specify the name of the company or group of companies that you want to display or report.

***ALL**: You want to work with all companies.

generic-company-name:* Specifies that the company name is generic. For example, specifying MC* would cause all pager companies whose names begin with MC to be included in the report or on the display.

company-name: Specifies the name of a specific pager company that you want to display or report.

Recipient (RCP)

Specify the name of the recipient or recipients that you want to report or display.

***ALL**: You want to work with pages for all recipients.

generic-recipient-name:* Specifies that the recipient name is generic. For example, specifying BAC* would cause all recipients whose names begin with BAC to be included in the report or on the display.

recipient-name: Specifies the name of a specific recipient's pages that you want to display or report.

Recipient group (GRP)

Specify the name of the recipient groups or groups that you want to report or display.

***ALL**: You want to work with pages for all recipient groups.

generic-recipient-group-name:* Specifies that the recipient group name is generic. For example, specifying MA* would cause all recipient groups whose names begin with MA to be included in the report or on the display.

recipient-group-name: Specifies the name of a specific recipient group's pages that you want to display or report.

From date (FROMDATE)

Specifies the beginning date that you want to use when reporting on page activity. The From date is the beginning of a date range of page activity.

***BEGIN**: The earliest date on the file is the beginning date of a date range.

***CURRENT**: The current date is the beginning date of a date range.

date: Enter the date in system format with or without date separators, that is, 12/23/03 or 122303, that you want to be the beginning date of a date range.

nnnnn: Specifies a number to represent the number of days before the current day that you want to use for the search. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/12/03, the From date would be 3/2/03.

To date (TODATE)

Specifies the ending date that you want to use when reporting on page activity. The To date is the ending limit of a date range of page activity.

***END**: The latest date file is used as the ending date in the date range.

***CURRENT**: The current date is the ending date of the date range.

date: Specifies the date in system format with or without date separators, that is, 2/23/03 or 22392, that you want to be the ending date of a date range.

nnnnn: Specifies a number to represent the number of days before the current day that you want to use for the search. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/22/03, the To date would be 3/12/03.

Page status (STATUS)

Specifies the status of the messages that you want to include in the message activity display or report.

***ALL**: You want to include all messages in the display or report, regardless of status.

***SENT**: You only want to include messages that have been sent in the display or report.

***PEND**: You only want to include messages that are waiting to be sent in the display or report. Pending messages are normally waiting for company queue depth or queue times to be satisified.

***ERROR**: You only want to include messages that had an error associated with them in the display or report.

***HELD**: You only want to include messages that are currently held in the display or report.

***SCHED**: You only want to include messages that are currently scheduled for transmission in the display or report.

***READY**: You only want to include messages that are ready to be sent but have not yet been transmitted. Normally messages that are ready to be sent but have not been sent are waiting for resources to complete the paging process.

Escalation status (ESCSTS)

Specifies the escalation status of the messages that you want to include in the message activity display or report.

***ALL**: You want to include all messages in the display or report, regardless of escalation status.

***ESCING**: You only want to include messages that are escalating. Messages that are escalating are messages that have been sent but not acknowledged and whose escalation time specified in the Delay prompt in the escalation table has not been exceeded. When the next recipient in an escalation list is sent the message (i.e., the escalation time is exceeded and the message to this recipient is not acknowledged) the status for the message changes from *ESCING to *ESCD.

***ACKD**: You only want to include messages that have been acknowledged by a recipient in an escalation table in the report or display.

***ESCD**: You want to include all messages that have been escalated. Messages that are escalated are messages that were sent as part of an escalation list but were not acknowledged before the time specified in the Delay prompt expired.

***EXPD**: You want to include all messages that have been expired. Messages that are expired are messages that were sent as part of an escalation list but were not acknowledged before the time specified in the Delay prompt expired. After all recipients in the escalation table are sent the message and none responds to the message, all messages are assigned an *EXPD status, even if there is a *REPEAT in the list that causes the recipients in the list to be messaged again.

***NONE**: You want to include all messages that are not to escalate and have no associated escalation table.

Job name (JOB)

Specify the name of the job or jobs whose messages you want to report or display.

<u>*ALL</u>: You want to work with messages sent from all jobs.

***CURRENT**: You want to work with messages sent from the current job.

job-name: Specifies the name of a specific job's messages you want to display or report.

generic-job-name:* Specifies that the job name is generic. For example, specifying BAC* would cause all messages for jobs whose names begin with BAC to be included in the report or on the display.

User (USER)

Specify the name of the user or users whose messages you want to report or display.

<u>*ALL</u>: You want to work with all messages sent from all users.

***CURRENT**: You want to work with all messages sent from the current user.

user-name: Specifies the name of a specific user's messages you want to display or report.

generic-user-name*: Specifies that the user name is generic. For example, specifying AC* would cause all messages for users whose names begin with AC to be included in the report or on the display.

Message text (MSGTXT)

This value searches within the messages for the text that you have specified.

***ALL**: You want to work with all messages, regardless of text.

generic-message-text*: Specify the generic text that you want to search for within a pager message.

Sequence option (SEQOPT)

The order in which you want to display or report the pages you have selected.

***<u>DATE</u>**: You want to display the selected pages in date order.

***RCP**: You want to display the selected pages in recipient order.

***GRP**: You want to display the selected pages in recipient group order.

Entries to be displayed first (START)

Whether you want to display or report your selected pages in ascending or descending order, based on the value in the **Sequence option** parameter.

<u>*LAST</u>: You want to display or report your pages in descending order.

***FIRST**: You want to display or report your pages in ascending order.

Output (OUTPUT)

Whether the pages are to be shown on the Work with Pages display or printed to a spooled file.

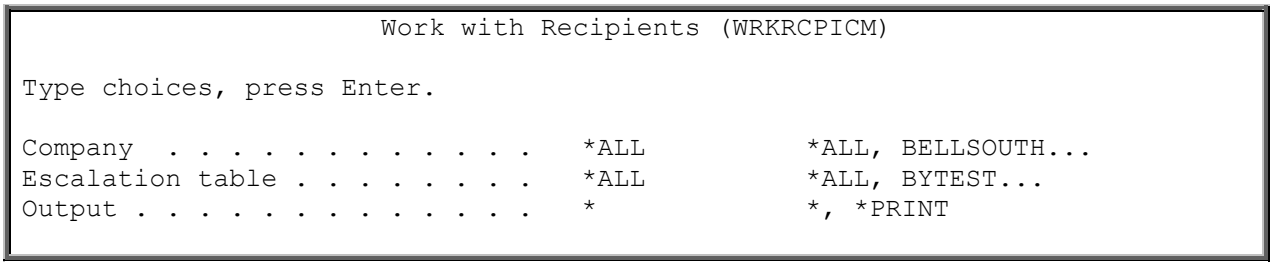
*****: Displays the Work with Pages display.

***PRINT**: Prints the Work with Pages report.

Work with Page Queues using ICOM/400 (WRKPAGQICM)

The Work with Page Queues using ICM (WRKPAGQICM) command takes you to the Work with Page Queue ICM display. Here you can work with the page queue for each company that you have entered in the Work with Pager Companies display. You can display or work with pages in a selected company queue, you can hold or release the company queue or you can send the pages in a company queue immediately. There are no parameters for this command.

Work with Recipients (WRKRCPICM)



The Work with Recipients (WRKRCPICM) command allows you to work with all or selected recipients by taking you to the Work with Recipients display. From there you can add, remove, change, or display recipient information. You can also designate recipients as on-call. Output can be a display or printed report. You may reach this display by typing WRKRCPICM on a command line and pressing F4.

Company (CMP)

Specifies the company whose recipients you want to work with.

***ALL**: Include all recipients for all companies in the display or report.

company-name: Specify the company whose recipients you want to include in the display or report.

Escalation table (ESCTBL)

Specifies the escalation table whose recipients you want to work with.

***ALL**: Include all recipients for all escalation tables in the display or report.

escalation-table-name: Specify the escalation table whose recipients you want to include in the display or report.

Output (OUTPUT)

Use the following values to specify whether recipients are to be shown on the Work with Recipients display, or printed.

*****: Displays the Work with Recipients display.

***PRINT**: Prints the Work with Recipients report.

Work with Schedules using ICOM/400 (WRKSCDICM)

This command allows you to work with all Schedules defined in ICOM/400. This command takes you directly to the Work with Schedules display. There are no parameters to enter or display. This display is reached by typing WRKSCDICM on the command line and pressing F4.

Work with Spooled Files (WRKSPLFICM)

```
                    Work with Spooled Files (WRKSPLFICM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Spooled File Name  . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, *ALL
Job  . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, *ALL
User . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Name, *CURRENT, *ALL
Output Queue . . . . . . . . .   *ALL          Name, *ALL
  Library  . . . . . . . . . .     *LIBL       Name, *LIBL
Time period for list:
  Start time and date:
  Beginning time . . . . . . .   *AVAIL        Time, *AVAIL
  Beginning date . . . . . . .   *BEGIN        Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn
  End time and date:
  Ending time  . . . . . . . .   *AVAIL        Time, *AVAIL
  Ending date  . . . . . . . .   *CURRENT      Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn
```

The Work with Spooled Files ICM (WRKSPLFICM) command displays a list of spooled files available for distribution. You may select a time range for the list of spooled files.

Spooled file name (LIBFLE)

Specifies the name of the spooled file that you want to list.

***ALL**: You want to list all spooled files.

spooled-file-name: Specify the name of the spooled file that you want to list.

Job (JOB)

Specifies the name of the job that produced the spooled file.

***ALL**: You want to use all jobs to produce a list of spooled files.

job-name: Specify the name of the job that produced the spooled file.

User (USER)

Specifies the user that originated the spooled file.

***CURRENT**: You want to use the current user to produce a list of spooled files.

***ALL**: You want to use all users to produce a list of spooled files.

user-name: Specify the name of the user that originated the spooled file.

Output queue (OUTQ)

Specifies the output queue and its associated library where the spooled file resides.

***ALL**: You want to use all output queues to produce a list of spooled files.

output-queue-name: Specify the name of the output queue where the spooled file resides.

***LIBL**: The library list is used to locate the output queue name.

library-name: Specify the name of the library where the output queue is located.

Time period for list (PERIOD)

Specifies the period of time for which the spooled file entries are selected for display. This parameter contains two lists of two elements each.

Beginning time

One of the following is used to specify the beginning creation time at which or after spooled file entries are included. Any entries created before the specified time and date are not included in the display.

***AVAIL**: Any time that is available for the beginning date is included.

begin-time: Specify the beginning time for the specified beginning date that indicates which spooled file entries are to be included.

The time is specified in 24-hour format and can be specified with or without a time separator:

- Without a time separator, specify a string of 4 digits (hhmm) where hh=hours and mm=minutes. Hours and minutes must each be exactly 2 digits (using leading zeros if necessary).
- With a time separator, specify a string of 5 digits where the time separator specified for your job is used to separate the hours, minutes, and seconds. If you enter this command from the command line, the string must be enclosed in apostrophes. If a time separator other than the separator specified for your job is used, this command will fail.

Beginning date

One of the following is used to specify the beginning creation date on or after which the spooled file entries were made. Any entries prior to the specified date are not included in the display.

***CURRENT**: Entries with a current date creation date and between the specified beginning and ending times (if specified) are included.

***BEGIN**: Entries from the beginning of the spooled file entries are included.

begin-date: Specify the beginning date. The date must be specified in the job date format.

number-of-days: Specify a number to represent the number of days before the current date that you want to use for the search. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/12/03 (date format is mm/dd/yy), the Begin date for the ICOM/400 log would be 3/2/03.

Ending time

One of the following is used to specify the ending time before which entries are included. Any items created after the specified time and date are not included in the entries for the display.

***AVAIL**: Any time that is available for the ending date is included.

end-time: Specify the ending time for the specified ending date that indicates which entries are to be included.

Ending date

One of the following is used to specify the ending date on which or before which the entries must have been made. Any spooled file entries made after the specified date are not included in the display.

***CURRENT**: Entries whose date is on or before the current date are included in the display.

***END**: The entries to the end of the log information are included in the display.

end-date: Specify the ending date. The date must be specified in the job date format.

number-of-days: Specify a number to represent the number of days before the current date that you want to use for the search. An example would be 10. If today's date were 3/22/03 (date format is mm/dd/yy), the End date for the ICOM/400 log would be 3/12/03.

Chapter 11 - Automated Customer Support

Automated Customer Support (ACS) is designed to permit remote user access to the Pinnacle customer support AS/400. This product is offered at no charge to customers who are under a software maintenance license agreement. It provides menu screens to assist you in defining ACS connectivity to the Pinnacle customer support machine and in ordering any necessary enhancements or corrections (PTFs) to Pinnacle software products. ACS is automatically installed at ICOM/400 installation time.

ACS allows you to:

- Order PTFs for any AS/Manager product
- Send a message to technical support
- Page a technical support representative for emergencies
- Ask questions or search for answers on Q&A database.

Automated Customer Support is provided as a service to our valued customers in order to assure the highest level of support. If you are interested in purchasing the product for your own PTF distribution requirements, call us and we will provide additional information.

To access ACS, choose **Option 30** from the ICOM/400 Main Menu or enter the command **GO ASM** from a command line. This will take you to the Automated Customer Support menu.

Troubleshooting

- Check line resource name.
- Check for another line varied on:

Use the **WRKCFGSTS *LIN ASM$LINE** command to look at the status of the ACS line. Enter a "1" beside it to vary it on. The line should then show connect pending. Now enter a "2" beside it to vary it off. If you get a failure on the vary on, then there is another line currently varied on to the resource. Enter the command WRKHDWRSC TYPE(*CMN) to look at all lines that share this resource. Then use WRKCFGSTS command to vary the line off.

- Make sure your modem is set for synchronous operation.

Refer to Chapter 2 for more information on configuring modems.

AS/Manager Customer Support Menu

The ACS system is designed to allow you to quickly and easily download program temporary fixes from the AS/Manager system to your system. This will allow fixes to be requested quickly without any delays waiting for distribution media shipments. Also support is provided to allow display station passthru for an AS/Manager technical support person to sign-on you machine to assist in problem solving or just to help with any questions you might have. All access is instigated by you. AS/Manager will never have the authority or the phone number to access your system.

Whenever PTFs are downloaded, accompanying documentaion will be printed giving complete instructions on how to install any fix.

```
ASM                          AS/Manager Customer Support

Select one of the following:

     1. Order PTF's from AS/Manager
```

```
     2. Sign on AS/Manager to ask questions or send message

     3. Configure communication for support


                                        Thanks for using electronic support

                                           Support: (918) 587-1500
                                           Fax:     (918) 587-1536
Selection or command


===>
```

Options

Option 1: This option allows you to order PTFs for all AS/Manager products. Simply enter the PTF ID supplied by AS/Manager technical support or the ICMSUMMARY. The PTF will be transferred to your machine and will be accompanied by a report highlighting the PTF and giving instructions on how to load it.

Option 2: This option connects you to Pinnacle's AS/Manager support system.

Option 3: This option allows you to configure your communications support to access ACS. This process must be completed before you can access ACS.

PTF Retrieval

This option allows you to order PTFs for all AS/Manager products. Simply enter the PTF ID supplied by AS/Manager technical support or the ICMSUMMARY. The PTF will be transferred to your machine and will be accompanied by a report highlighting the PTF and giving instructions on how to load it.

```
                          AS/Manager PTF Retrieval


Type options, press Enter.

    PTF Identifer . . . . . .

    Company Name  . . . . . .
    Contact Name  . . . . . .
    Telephone Number  . . . . . .
```

Some important fields for this display include the following:

- **PTF ID**: The ID of the PTF that you want to download. This is provided to you by AS/Manager technical support.
- **Customer information**: Enter your company name, contact name and telephone number. A message will be displayed at the bottom of the screen giving the status of the transfer operation. To view a summary of all available PTF's for ICOM/400, enter ICMSUMMARY in the PTF ID.

Sign-on to AS/Manager Support System

You can perform the following support functions:

- Send a message to technical support.
- Page a technical support representative.
- Ask questions or search for answers on Q&A database.

Note: Your page will not be sent until you sign off ACS.

```
                    Sign on to AS/Manager Support System


Press Enter to continue.


   Beginning passthru to AS/Manager. When signon appears enter:

   Userid: SUPPORT       Password: SUPPORT
```

AS/Manager Communication

This option allows you to configure your communications support to access ACS. This process must be completed before you can access ACS.

```
                    AS/Manager Communication Configuration

Type options, press Enter.


     Line Resource Name  . . . . . .  CMN01
     Line Speed  . . . . . . . . . .  2400
     AS/Manager Dial in Number . . . .  SST19185876923
```

Some important fields for this display include:

- **Line resource name**: This is the name of the AS/400 line resource used to access ACS. It will normally be LIN011. This line has to be in synchronous mode when using ACS. If your not sure of your line resource name, enter DSPLIND QESLINE on a command line and use the "Resource name" value returned as the line resource name.
- **Line speed**: This is your communication speed. The default is 2400 baud. This value should not go above 2400.
- **AS/Manager Dial-in Number**: This is the Pinnacle ACS phone number. If you are using a PBX system your string should be similar to "SST9,,19185876923' (the first 9 is the value to get an outside line; yours may be different).

Once all values are correct, press Enter. This will create a line (ASM$LINE), a controller (ASM$CTL) and a device (ASM$DEV). The user should not vary these objects on. The order process will vary them on during the procedure and off at the end. You must ensure that no other lines are varied onto the resource that you name for this line. In most cases the screen can be used with the provided defaults.

Appendix A - Product Warranty and Support

This section contains important warranty and product support information. Please read it carefully.

Product Support Worldwide

Pinnacle support offers you a wide range of choices and access to high-quality, responsive technical support. ICOM/400 has been thoroughly tested and comes with on-line help text as well as user documentation. Displays are simple to understand and use.

When You Have A Question

- Check the on-line help text.
- Consult the ICOM/400 documentation and other printed information included with ICOM/400.

Consult electronic options using AS/Manager Customer Support (ACS). This is accessed by option 30 from the main menu. This will allow you to:

- Display answers to commonly asked questions using the Q&A database
- Send a message to Technical Support
- Page a Technical Support person in emergency situations.

For more information on ACS consult Chapter 11.

When calling AS/Manager Support, you should be at your computer and have documentation at hand. Be prepared to give the following information:

- The version of ICOM/400 that you are using
- The version of OS/400 you are using
- The exact wording of any messages that appear on your screen along with the message ID
- A printout of the joblog when the problem occurred
- A description of what happened and what you were doing when the problem occurred
- A description of how you tried to solve the problem.

There is a worksheet on the following page that allows you to fill in these values for quick reference.

Product Warranty and Maintenance

Pinnacle warrants that ICOM/400 software will be free of defects for 90 days after software installation. Product technical phone support and replacement materials will be provided during this time at no charge.

Annual maintenance agreements may be purchased by licensed users as shown on the AS/Manager license agreement and current price schedule for ongoing ICOM/400 support after the initial 90-day free warranty period. Payment of this fee entitles you to continuing technical support, product enhancements, problem corrections, and new releases of ICOM/400.

Even though Pinnacle has thoroughly tested the ICOM/400 software and documentation and reviewed their contents, Pinnacle and its distributors make no warranties, either express or implied, with respect to ICOM/400 software and documentation, their merchantability, or their fitness for any particular purpose. The ICOM/400 software and documentation are distributed solely on an "as is" basis. The entire risk as to their quality and performance is with the customer. Pinnacle and its distributors will not be liable for direct, indirect, incidental or consequential damages resulting from any defect in the ICOM/400 software or manual.

Appendix B – ICOM/400 Voice

PC Requirements

1. Windows 98/NT/2000
2. Voice modem device provided by Pinnacle Business Systems
3. Network connection with static IP address
4. Access to analogue telephone line
5. Access to CD-ROM drive for installation

Installation Instructions - PC

Windows 98:

1. Install the voice modem device.
    a. If you are installing a ModemBlaster follow the instructions shipped with the modem.
    b. If you are installing a PhoneRider board follow the instructions on PhoneRider Installation under Windows 98 in Appendix D.
2. Plug in the analogue phone line into the Tel Line phone connection on the voice modem device.
3. Using the CD provided by Pinnacle Business Systems, select Run from the Start menu and run X:\ICOM400\ICOMVoice\SETUP.EXE (where X is the CD-ROM drive)
4. Follow the prompts on the panels and finish setup by rebooting when prompted.
5. Note: During the installation you may encounter the Version Conflict panel. Select the Yes button each time it is shown.
6. The ICOM400 Voice panel appears when Windows opens after restarting the PC. Select the appropriate device and desired voice.
7. As a quick test, use a telephone to dial the number of the phone line connected to the voice modem device.

Windows NT:

1. Follow the instructions on PhoneRider Installation under Windows NT 4.0 in Appendix D.
2. Plug in the analogue phone line into the Tel Line phone connection on the PhoneRider board.
3. Using the CD provided by Pinnacle Business Systems, select Run from the Start menu and run X:\ICOM400\ICOMVoice\SETUP.EXE (where X is the CD-ROM drive)
4. Follow the prompts on the panels and finish setup by rebooting when prompted.
5. The ICOM400 Voice panel appears when Windows opens after restarting the PC. Select the PhoneRider device and desired voice.
6. As a quick test, use a telephone to dial the number of the phone line connected to the voice modem device.

Windows 2000:

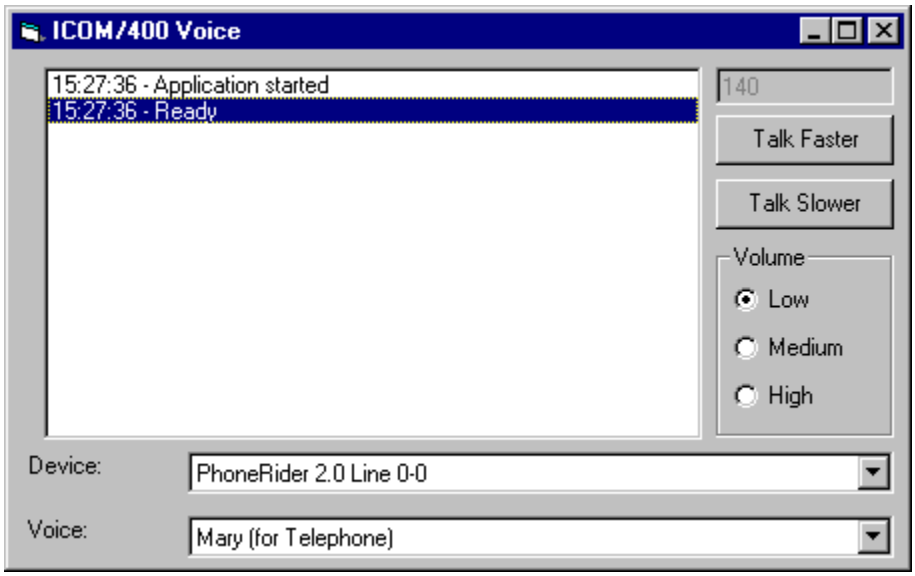
1. Install the voice modem device.
2. If you are installing a ModemBlaster:
    a. Load the CD provided by Pinnacle Business Systems.
    b. Shut down and turn off the computer.
    c. Install the modem.
    d. Turn on the computer.

e. Follow the New Hardware prompts noting the following:
    i. When asked to Locate Driver Files select the CD-ROM drives option only.
    ii. Click Yes on the Digital Signature not Found panel.
f. Continue with the next step.

3. If you are installing a PhoneRider board follow the instructions on PhoneRider Installation under Windows 2000 in Appendix D.
4. Plug in the analogue phone line into the Tel Line phone connection on the voice modem device.
5. Using the CD provided by Pinnacle Business Systems, select Run from the Start menu and run X:\ICOM400\ICOMVoice\SETUP.EXE (where X is the CD-ROM drive)
    a. Follow the prompts on the panels and finish setup by rebooting when prompted.
    b. Note: During the copy of files you may encounter the Confirm File Replace panel, select 'No to all' button. Later in the process if the install seems to be stopped you will need to Alt Tab in order to see a second Confirm File Replace panel where you will select the 'No to all' button.
    c. The ICOM400 Voice panel appears when Windows opens after restarting the PC. Select the appropriate device and desired voice.
6. As a quick test, use a telephone to dial the number of the phone line connected to the voice modem device.

Reinstallation

1. Close the ICOM/400 Voice dialog box.



2. Follow step 3 for your appropriate version of Windows.

Installation Instructions – AS/400

Overview

ICOM/400 has a great way of eliminating the cost of a pager as well as offering 2-way capabilities virtually anywhere. With voice messaging, virtually any phone (cellular or land line) can be called, the AS/400 message spoken and the response received. Through the use of TCP/IP and a PC with a voice modem your AS/400 can talk to you and you can respond back. This feature truly enhances our message queue monitor. With a message queue monitor you could monitor for any inquiry message. After an inquiry message is encountered a recipient (phone) can be dialed and the message spoken along with a list of responses. The response entered by the recipient will in turn answer the message on the message queue.

Setting up the AS/400

First thing is to let ICOM/400 know about the PCs that will be used for voice messaging. For each PC an IP entry is created in ICOM/400. The two major things you will need to know for this is the IP address of the PC and whether the phone line connected to the voice modem device is a direct line or linked to the PBX system. Follow the next few steps to create one or more IP entries.

1. Access the ICOM/400 main menu by typing GO ICM on a command line.
2. From the ICOM/400 main menu take Option 4 (Recipient Information menu).
3. From the Recipient Information menu take Option 9 (Work with IP Entries).
4. Use Option 1 to add an IP entry. This is where you will specify the IP address of the PC. If the phone line connected to the voice modem device is not a direct line you may need to specify a telephone prefix such as 9, (9comma) for dialing out.
5. Verify that the ICOM Voice program is active on the PC. Use Option 7 on the newly added IP entry to test the connection to the PC. You should get a Response received from IP message.
6. After all the IP entries are added press F12 to return to the Recipient Information menu.

Now ICOM/400 needs to know the phone number of the person to call (recipient). There are multiple delivery types a recipient can contain. For instance, a recipient can be defined with a pager, an email address, and a phone number for voice messaging. Follow the next few steps to create a new recipient with voice messaging.

1. From the Recipient Information menu take Option 1 (Work with Recipients).
2. Use Option 1 to add a recipient.
3. Key in the persons name in the text field. This will be used in the introduction of the voice message.
4. Use Option 1 to add a delivery type along with 10 as the sequence and *PHONE as the delivery type. *PHONE can be used for just dialing a phone number and sending a tone signal or for voice messaging.
5. From the Add Recipient Delivery Entry screen, key in the person's phone number as well as an IP entry (the one you added earlier) and possibly a security code. A security code will prevent unauthorized persons from hearing a voice message without first entering the specified security code. There are different ways to define an introduction for the voice message. Reference the FAQs for an explanation. The **Allow 2-way communication** field must be set to ***YES** in order to respond to the voice message by pressing the appropriate number.

Now ICOM/400 has everything it needs to know in order to send a voice message. You can test it by using the SNDMSGICM (Send Message) command and by specifying the recipient just added. To test the 2-way capabilities, specify *YES on the Check for reply (CHKRPY) field and then enter valid responses in the Valid reply list (VLDRPYL) field. Displaying the history entry will show the response selected by the recipient of the voice message. Reference the FAQs for characteristics of voice messaging.

Frequently Asked Questions about Voice Messaging

1. Why does the computer not wait for me to say hello when I answer a call?

Answer: The voice modems such as the ModemBlaster cannot detect when the call is answered. Therefore, the introduction is started as soon as the number is dialed. The introduction is played 4 times unless a security code is entered or the number 1 if a security code is not required. After that the message is played. If no numbers were entered the call is flagged in error because no one actually heard the message.

2. Can I use a ModemBlaster on Windows NT?

Answer: No. The drivers provided by the manufacturer does not contain everything needed for voice applications.

3. Can I use more than one PC to issue calls?

Answer: Yes. The ICOM/400 AS/400 product was designed to handle multiple PCs issuing outbound calls. Each PC is defined as an IP entry in the ICOM/400 AS/400 product specifying the IP address as well as a telephone prefix (i.e. 9,) if needed. The *PHONE delivery type is used to define the voice feature for a recipient. This delivery type allows you to specify the IP entry name or *ANY. If an entry name is used every call will be issued from the PC associated with the IP address of the IP entry. If *ANY is used ICOM will search for any IP entries that are active but not currently busy.

4. Can I have multiple AS/400s use the same PC to issue calls?

Answer: Yes. The ICOM/400 AS/400 product was designed to wait up to 30 minutes for the PC to become available in case other calls were being issued from one or more AS/400s.

5. Is there a way I can secure the message from playing for just anyone?

Answer: Yes. When defining the *PHONE delivery type, you can enter a security code that will be required by the recipient before the message is played.

6. What are the different ways I can define the introduction message?

Answer: For starters, if a something other than *NONE is entered in the text field of the recipient it is assumed that it is the name of the recipient. Therefore, the introduction would start out by saying, “Message for Lance Scott.”, if Lance Scott was entered in the text field.

The default for the Introduction field in the *PHONE delivery type is “from &SYSID”. Since multiple AS/400s may be used it may be necessary for the recipient to know which system initiated the call. If the default was used and a name entered in the text field the introduction would say “Message for Lance Scott from system S Y S 0 0 1.”. All replacement variables like &SYSID, &JOB, &USER, &MSGID etc, will be spelled out. If they were not spelled out, the text-to-speech engine would try to pronounce the Job name and it would not be understandable. You can also define your own introduction.

After the introduction is played the user is asked to enter a security code, if required, or 1 to continue. So, if there is no name in the text field and the Introduction field in the *PHONE delivery type is changed to *NONE then the introduction would only say “Press 1 to continue.” Or “Enter your security code followed by the # sign.”

7. Can I replay the message?

Answer: Yes. The message can be replayed at any point during the message or during the list of responses by pressing "*".

8. Can I replay the list of responses?

Answer: Yes. The list of responses can be replayed at any point during the message or during the list of responses by pressing "#".

9. How do I skip listening to the rest of the message?

Answer: You can press any number or the "#".

10. What happens if I enter a response then hang up?

Answer: Normally you are asked to confirm your response but if you hang up before the confirmation the response that is entered will be used.

11. Does the message stop escalating after the recipient hears the message?

Answer: Yes. Once the recipient enters the appropriate numbers on the introduction the message is marked as being heard and will be acknowledged within ICOM/400 history.

12. Why does it sometimes tell me that my security code is not correct?

Answer: There are times that the modem does not detect a number that was pressed because the signal was not strong enough. When this happens key the numbers in slower and more defined.

13. What if I do not want to respond to the message?

Answer: There may be times that the recipient is not prepared to respond to a voice message that contains a list of responses. When this is the case, just hang up without selecting any response. The call will end and the message will be acknowledged. This will stop the message from escalating if escalation was used.

14. Can I send a voice message without creating a recipient?

Answer: Yes. In the Voice section of the System Attributes you must specify the IP Entry and possibly a telephone prefix (9,). On the Send Message (SNDMSGICM) command you would specify *NONE as the Name. Key in the message and hit enter. Page down and enter the Phone number in the Phone number (PHONE) field. Press F16 when ready to issue the message.

15. How can I find the message number of a message in order to replay it at a later time?

Answer: There are several ways to find the message number. For starters you can use a replacement variable (&MSGNBR) in the pre/post text of a recipient. This would cause the message number to be part of the outgoing message. If the outgoing message is to a phone the message would contain 'Message number is 45'. Also on phone messages, the message number can be played at anytime during the body of the message by pressing the # button. The message number is also played during the 3rd and 4th repetition of the introduction. This would allow you to hear the message number in case you were not at home and the introduction is being recorded on your answering machine.

16. Can I access my voice menu during an outbound call?

Answer: Yes. Before the message is played you are asked if you want to sign on by pressing 1. If 1 is pressed, you will then be asked to enter your user code. After signed on your voice menu is played. This will not acknowledge the original outbound message.

Appendix C – Inbound ICOM/400 Voice

While ICOM/400 Voice allows your AS/400 to call you with important messages, ICOM/400 Inbound Voice allows *you* to call your AS/400. Using a PC as an interface, you call your AS/400 and enter a user code, if applicable. A menu that corresponds to the user code will be played. You can select an option from the menu to answer a previously unanswered message, run a command, access another menu, as well as listen to previously played messages or message lists.

To use the Inbound Feature of ICOM/400 Voice, enter **go ICMVOICE** on an AS/400 command line. The following menu will be displayed:

```
ICMVOICE                          Voice Menu

Select one of the following:

     1. Work with user codes
     2. Work with voice menus
     3. Work with IP entries
```

Option 1=Work with User Codes

Entering 1 on the command line takes you to the Work with User Codes display.

```
                         Work with User Codes

 Position to . . . . . .                        Starting characters

 Type options, press Enter.
   1=Add  2=Change  3=Copy  4=Remove  5=Display

 Opt User code             Text

     1                     Sample user code
     2                     *NONE
     3                     *NONE
     88                    Bruce's menu
     99                    Lance's menu
```

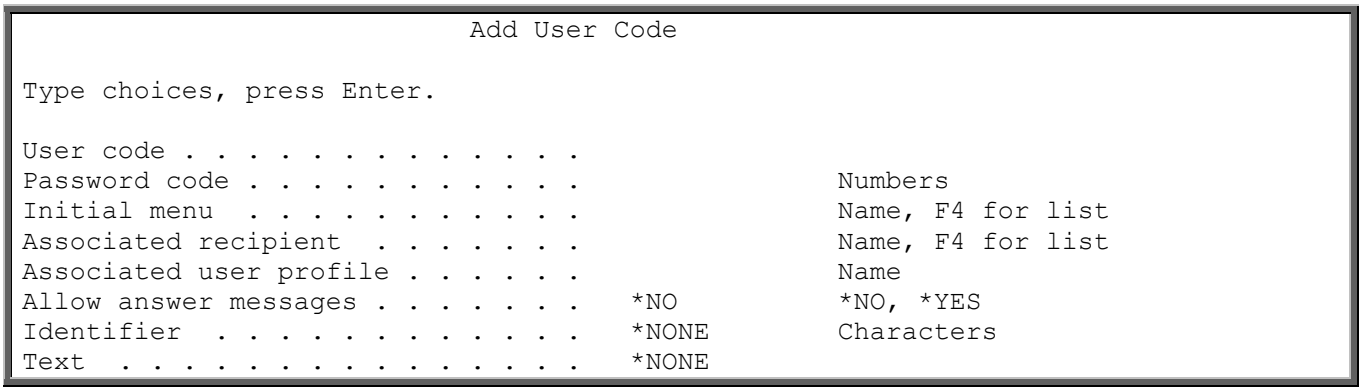
The Work with User Codes display shows all user codes that have been defined to ICOM/400. A user code is a numerical code that can be used to verify an ICOM/400 Inbound Voice user and determine what menu is played for that user.

From this display, you have many options. You can add (**Option 1**) user codes, change (**Option 2**) user codes that you have already defined, copy (**Option 3**) user codes, remove (**Option 4**) user codes and display (**Option 5**) user codes.

The display lists the user code and a text description of the code.

Adding a User Code

To add a user code, enter a 1 on the first line of the **Opt** column, along with the numerical code you want to add. Press Enter to go to the Add User display.



The Add User Code display allows you to add a user code and its associated information, such as password code, initial menu, associated recipient, user profile, and other information.

There are several important fields that are common to all delivery entries. These include:

- **User code:** The numerical code that will be used to determine which menu is played when using the ICOM/400 Inbound Voice feature. This code can consist of up to 20 numbers.
- **Password code:** An optional numerical password code that allows you to ensure extra security when using the ICOM/400 Inbound Voice feature. You can specify a password code of up to 10 numbers. When you dial in, you will be asked to enter a user code and then the password code.
- **Initial menu:** Specifies what menu will be played when the person with this user code uses the ICOM/400 Inbound Voice feature. To bring up a list of existing menus, press F4.
- **Associated recipient:** Specifies a recipient that you want to associate with this user code. To select from a list of existing recipients, press F4.
- **Associated user profile:** Specifies a user profile that you want to associate with this user code. The authority of this user will be used when calling exit programs or executing commands.
- **Allow answer messages:** Indicates if you want this user code to be able to answer pending messages or just play messages without answering them.
- **Identifier:** Specifies the identifier to be associated with this user code. The identifier is a name or number that can be used with the *INFO menu item type. ***NONE** indicates that there is no identifier associated with this user code.

Changing a User Code

To change a user code, enter a **2** beside the user code you want to change on the Work with User Codes display. You are taken to the Change User Code display. Refer to **Adding a User Code** for more information on the Change User Code display fields.

Copying a User Code

To copy a user code, enter a **3** beside the user code you want to copy on the Work with User Codes display. You are taken to the Copy User Code display. Enter a number for your new user code in the **New Name** field and press Enter. Your new user code is added to the list of existing user codes.

Removing a User Code

To remove a user code, enter a **4** beside the user code(s) you want to remove. You are taken to the Confirm Remove of User Codes display. Pressing Enter removes the user code(s). To change your selections, press F12 to return to the Work with User Codes display.

Displaying a User Code

To display a user code, enter a **5** beside the user code you want to display on the Work with User Codes display. You are taken to the Display User Code display. Refer to **Adding a User Code** for more information on the Display User Code display fields.

Option 2=Work with Voice Menus

Entering 2 on the command line takes you to the Work with Voice Menus display.

```
                              Work with Voice Menus

Position to . . . . . .               Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add  2=Change  3=Copy  4=Remove  5=Display

Opt Menu        Text

    BRUCE       Bruce menu
    LANCE       Lance menu
    MAIN        Main menu
    MESSAGE     Message menu
    ONEOPTION   One option
    PARTDEMO    PART DEMO
    SAMPLE      Sample - Messages, Commands, User information
    SAMPLE2     Sample menu - System information
    SECONDARY   Secondary menu
```

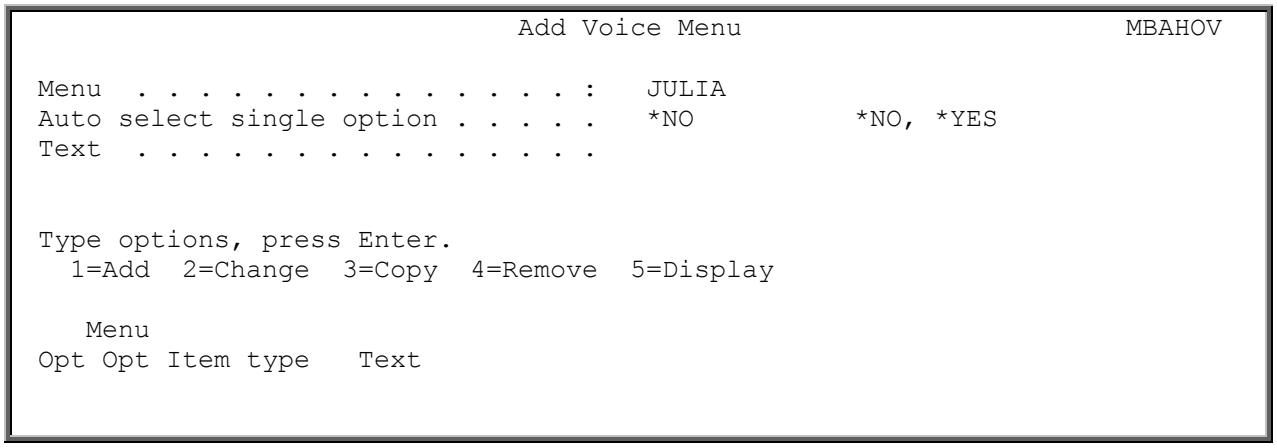
The Work with Voice Menus displays allow you to work with the inbound voice menus that have been defined to ICOM/400. A voice menu is a menu with various options that is played when a user calls ICOM/400.

From this display, you have many options. You can add (**Option 1**) voice menus, change (**Option 2**) voice menus that you have already defined, copy (**Option 3**) voice menus, remove (**Option 4**) voice menus and display (**Option 5**) voice menus.

The display lists the menu name and a text description of the menu.

Adding a Voice Menu

To add a voice menu, enter a 1 on the first line of the **Opt** column, along with the name of the voice menu you want to add. Press Enter to go to the Add Voice Menu display.



The Add Voice Menu display is used to add a menu and related information about that menu. A voice menu is a menu that is associated with an Inbound Voice user code. Once a user calls up ICOM/400 and enters their user code, a voice menu will be played.

To add a voice menu, follow the steps below:

1. Specify if you want to allow a single option to be automatically selected. That is, if you have only one option on the menu, you can specify to automatically select that option without playing the menu first.
2. Enter a description of the menu in the **Text** field.
3. You need to add option(s) to your menu. Enter a 1 on the first line of the **Opt** column, a option number in the menu option field (from 1 to 10) and the item type you want to add. If you do not specify an item type, ICOM/400 automatically defaults to ***MSGL**.

Add Menu Item

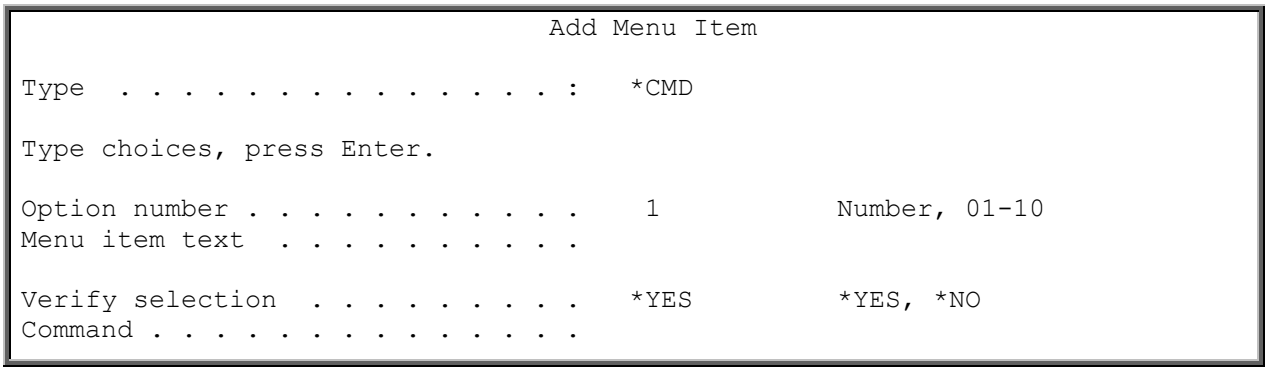
The Add Menu Item display is used to add a menu option for a voice menu. There are several different item types. These include: ***CMD**, ***INFO**, ***MENU**, ***MSG**, and ***MSGL**.

There are a few fields that are common to most menu items. These include:

- **Option number:** Indicates the order that this menu item will be played in the menu. This can be from 1 to 10, and there can be no duplicates.
- **Menu item text:** When playing the menu item, the text description that ICOM/400 Inbound Voice will play.

Command (*CMD)

The ***CMD** menu item type allows you to run a command by selecting this menu option type. You can specify if you want to verify the command before it is run, and the command code.



Some important fields include:

- **Verify selection:** Indicate whether you want to verify your selection. ***YES** specifies that you do want to verify your selection, and the command will not be run until you do. ***NO** indicates that you are to automatically run the command without verification.
- **Command:** Specify the CL command that you want to run when this menu option is selected. You can prompt the command by pressing F4.

Information (*INFO)

The ***INFO** menu item type allows you to play a simple customized message or it allows you to run a CL program that you have created. This item type is used when an interface into your application is needed, such as playing the current sales for the week. You can specify the option number, a text description of the menu item, a message to be associated with the menu item, the program to process and library, as well as program value and whether to pass a reply or not.

The *INFO type allows a user exit program to be in control of the dialogue between the AS/400 and the person on the phone. Within the ICOMTOOLS source file found in the ICOMTOOLS library are two sample programs that will help you understand how this process works. The source members start with PARTDEMO and SAYSTATUS. The SAYSTATUS sample program is the equivalent to the ICMCSTS program that is used in the SAMPLE2 menu.

```
                                Add Menu Item

Type  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . :   *INFO

Type choices, press Enter.

Option number . . . . . . . . . . .    1           Number, 01-10
Menu item text  . . . . . . . . . .

Message . . . . . . . . . . . . . .   *PGM


Program to process  . . . . . . . .                Name, *NONE
  Library . . . . . . . . . . . . .     *LIBL       Name, *LIBL
Program value . . . . . . . . . . .   *NONE         Chararcters, *NONE
Pass reply  . . . . . . . . . . . .   *NO           *NO, *YES
```

Some important fields include:

- **Message:** Specify the message you want to play for this option. *PGM indicates that you wish to execute a program to run when this menu option is selected. If you specify *PGM in the Message field, you must enter a program name and library in the Program to process and Library fields. If *PGM is not used, you can also enter plain text in the message field.
- **Program to process:** Indicate the program and library that you want to execute when *PGM is specified in the Message field. Specify ***NONE** if you do not want to execute a program, or the name of the program you want to run.
- **Program value:** Specifies a value that will be passed to the program. This value is used by the program to know what to process next. Refer to Appendix E for more information. ***NONE** indicates that there are no program values to pass to the program you have selected to run.
- **Pass reply:** Specifies if you want to call the specified program twice. Once in order to request the user to enter a number (such as salesperson number) and then a second time in order to pass the number that the user entered to your program. ***NO** indicates that you do not want

to pass a reply to your program. ***YES** indicates that you do want to pass a reply to your program.

For more information on *INFO menu item type, refer to Appendix E.

Menu (*MENU)

The ***MENU** menu item type allows you to play a secondary menu. You can specify the option number, a text description of the menu, and the secondary menu associated with this menu.

```
                                Add Menu Item

Type  . . . . . . . . . . . . . :   *MENU

Type choices, press Enter.

Option number . . . . . . . . . .    1           Number, 01-10
Menu  . . . . . . . . . . . . . .                Name, F4 for list
```

Some important fields include:

- **Menu:** Specify the secondary menu you want to play for this option. Press F4 to bring up a list of existing menus.

Message (*MSG)

The ***MSG** menu item type allows you to replay a message. You can specify the option number, and the text associated with the menu.

```
                                Add Menu Item

Type  . . . . . . . . . . . . . :   *MSG

Type choices, press Enter.

Option number . . . . . . . . . .    1           Number, 01-10
Menu item text  . . . . . . . . .    replay message
```

Message List (*MSGL)

The ***MSGL** menu item type allows you to replay a list of messages. You can specify the option number, and the text associated with the menu. You can also specify the list type, the recipient or group name, whether to play only unanswered messages, the message order, and if you want to include the date and time of each message.

```
                                Add Menu Item

Type  . . . . . . . . . . . . . :   *MSGL

Type choices, press Enter.

Option number . . . . . . . . . .    1           Number, 01-10
Menu item text  . . . . . . . . .
```

```
List type . . . . . .   *RCP        *RCP, *GRP
Recipient/Group . . . . . .   *USER       Name, *ALL, *USER, F4 List
Unanswered messages only  . . . . .   *YES        *YES, *NO
Messages to be listed first . . . .   *LAST       *LAST, *FIRST
Include date in message . . . . . .   *NO         *NO, *YES
Include time in message . . . . . .   *YES        *YES, *NO
```

Some important fields include:

- **List type:** Indicates the list type for this message list. You can specify a recipient (***RCP**) or a group (***GRP**) type.
- **Recipient/Group**: Specify the recipient or group associated with this message list. You can specify ***ALL** for all recipients, ***USER** for the recipient associated with the user code for this menu, or a specific recipient or group. To bring up a list of existing recipients/groups, press F4.
- **Unanswered messages only**: Indicates if you want to play only those messages that have not been answered.
- **Messages to be listed first**: Indicate the order in which you want to list messages. ***LAST** indicates that you want to list messages in descending order by date and time. ***FIRST** indicates that you want to list messages in ascending order by date and time.
- **Include date in message**: Specify if you want to include the message date when the message is played.
- **Include time in message**: Specify if you want to include the message time when the message is played.

Option 3 – Work with IP Entries

See Chapter 6 – Work with Recipients, Option 9.

Frequently Asked Questions about Inbound Voice

1. Can I set up the inbound voice so that it will skip the user code entry and start playing the menu?

Answer: Yes. First, go to the ICMVOICE menu and create a user code with the appropriate menu assigned to it. Second, access the Work with IP Entries display and locate the entry that defines the PC receiving the calls. Take option 2 on the entry and change the Default user code to the one just created. Now every time that PC receives a call it will automatically use the user code found in the IP entry. This will immediately start playing the menu options.

2. Can I set up the inbound voice so that it will automatically start a menu option right from the beginning of the call?

Answer: Yes. You will need to create a menu that contains only one option and change the Auto select single option field to *YES. Follow the instructions on FAQ 1 using the menu just created. Once this is completed all calls received by that PC will automatically use the user code found in the IP entry, which will immediately access the menu, which will immediately start the option within the menu.

3. What are the common reasons why an inbound call cannot be established?

Answer: 1) The program on the PC is not active. 2) The program on the PC has been disabled due to too many consecutive bad calls. 3) TCP/IP is down. 4) The ZICOM400 subsystem is not

active on the AS/400. 5) The IP address of the AS/400 has not been specified within the Inbound information on the PC program.

4. Is there a way to access my files in order to provide the caller some information?

Answer: Yes. When defining the *INFO menu type an exit program can be specified so that when called it could access your files and generate a message to be given to the caller. For instance, you could give the caller the status of an invoice or the current sales figures for the month and so on. Please refer to the manual for more details on the exit program as well as where to find sample programs that will help you get started.

5. How can I find the message number of a message in order to replay it at a later time?

Answer: There are several ways to find the message number. For starters you can use a replacement variable (&MSGNBR) in the pre/post text of a recipient. This would cause the message number to be part of the outgoing message. If the outgoing message is to a phone the message would contain 'Message number is 45'. Also on phone messages, the message number can be played at anytime during the body of the message by pressing the # button. The message number is also played during the 3rd and 4th repetition of the introduction. This would allow you to hear the message number in case you were not at home and the introduction is being recorded on your answering machine.

6. How can I replay a message if I don't know the message number?

Answer: A menu option can be set up with type *MSGL which will list previous messages within ICOM/400. The menu item can be set up to only list messages based on the recipient found in the user code definition and whether to include only unanswered messages.

7. Can I answer a message at a later time using inbound voice?

Answer: Yes. Either by replaying a specific message or when listing messages.

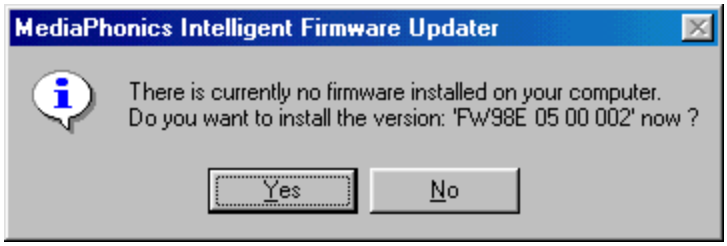
Appendix D – Phone Rider Modem

PhoneRider Installation under Windows 98

Locate the Windows 98 CD-Rom. It may be used later in the installation.

Load the latest drivers for the PhoneRider board using the CD provided by Pinnacle Business Systems. Select Run from the Start menu and run X:\ICOM400\ICOMVoice\Win98\ FW98E0500002.exe (where X is the CD-ROM drive) or browse the CD-ROM drive to find the program in the mentioned folder.

This will create a folder with the latest drivers.



Follow the prompts until asked if you want to install the version even though there is no firmware installed, ***Click No*** and continue with instructions below.

Shut down and turn off the computer. Install the PhoneRider board.

Turn the PC on. When Windows 98 starts, a ***Building driver information database*** panel appears showing the progress of the procedure.

Then, the first panel of the **Add New Hardware Wizard** appears informing you that it will search for new drivers for MediaPhonics PhoneRider Card v1.2.

Click *Next.*

On the second panel, select the *"Search for the best driver for your device. (Recommended)."* radio button, and then click ***Next***.

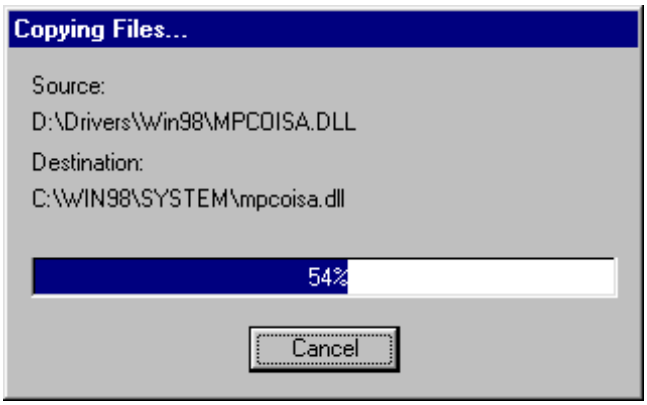
Note: This option is normally selected by default.

The third panel allows you to select the location of the PhoneRider drivers. Select the *"Specify a location:"* check box only. Specify the path C:\MPI2DRV and then click ***Next***.

← Path should be C:\MPI2DRV

The fourth panel informs you that Windows has found the driver and displays its name and location.
Click ***Next***.

← Path should be C:\MPI2DRV\MPDspw98.inf



A small ***Copying files*** panel appears, showing that files are being copied onto your hard drive.

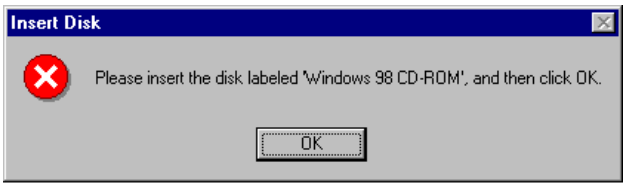
The Wizard informs you then that Windows has installed the software required for the PhoneRider Accelerator.

Press the *Finish* button.

Despite of the label "Finish" on the button, the installation procedure will continue.

Reboot when prompted.

Two ***New Hardware Found*** panels will inform you that the PhoneRider COM Port and Analog Devices AD 1815 Sound Controller were detected.



Then, the ***Insert Disk*** panel pops up, asking you: *Please, insert the disk labeled 'Windows 98 CD-ROM', and then click OK.* Insert the Windows 98 CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive and confirm by clicking OK.

All necessary files will be automatically installed on your PC.

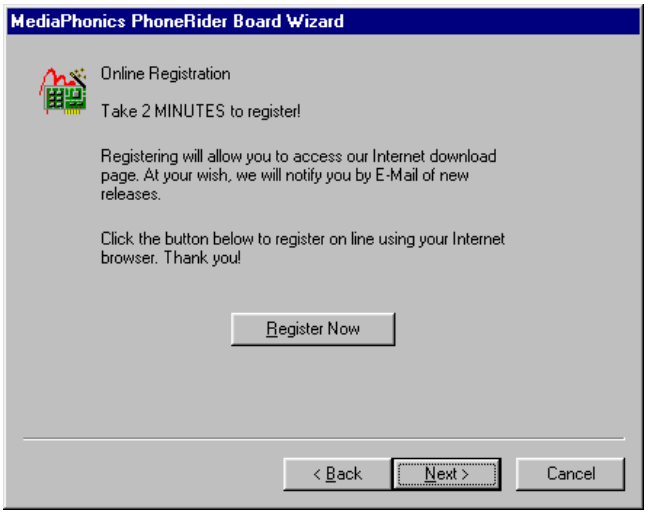
A ***Building driver information database*** panel briefly appears showing the progress of the procedure.

Once the database is ready, the ***System Setting Change*** dialog box opens, asking you: "*To finish setting up your new hardware, you must restart your computer. Do you want to restart your computer now?*" Click Yes to reboot your PC.

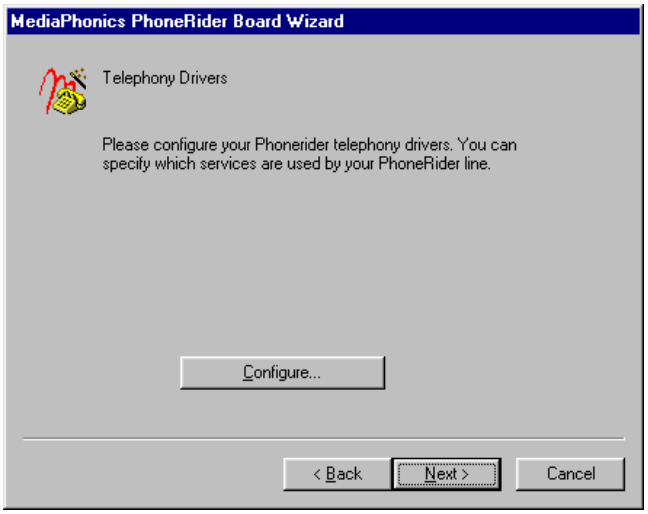
When Windows 98 is charged after restarting your PC, the PhoneRider Board Wizard opens.

PhoneRider board Wizard

The **MediaPhonics PhoneRider Board Wizard** appears when Windows opens after restarting the PC. On the **Welcome** panel, click *Next*.

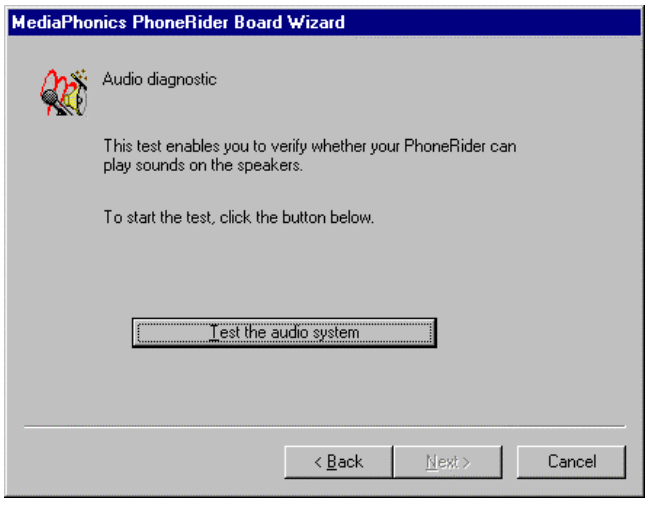


The second panel offers you the possibility to automatically register through MediaPhonics Web page. Click *Next*.

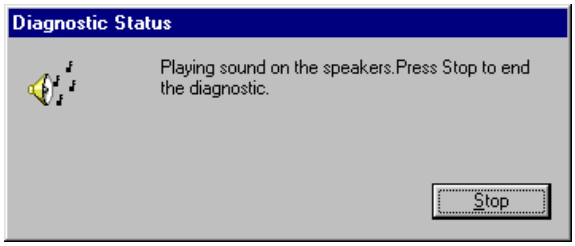


The **Telephony Drivers** panel opens.

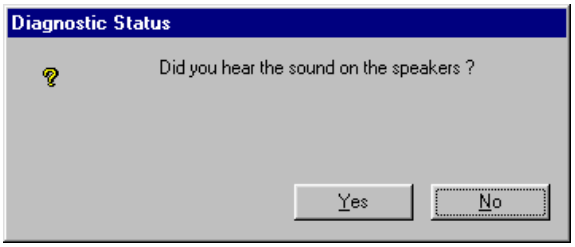
Click Next.



The **Audio diagnostic** panel appears. Press the *Test the audio system* button even though you may not hear any audio.

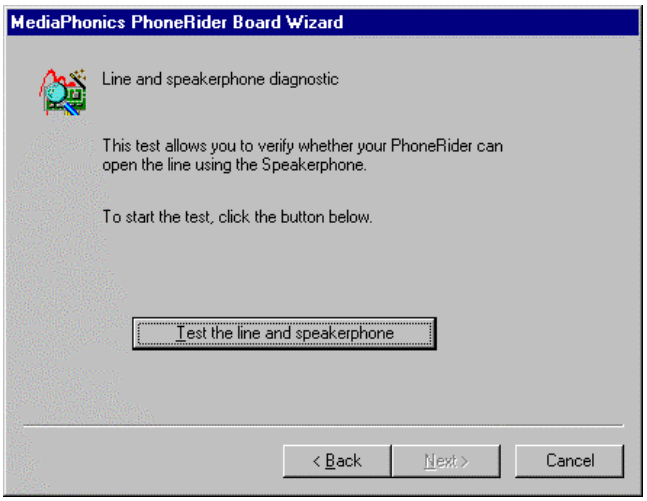


The *Diagnostic Status* window opens. Click *Stop.*

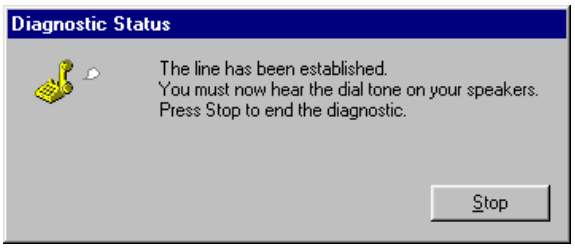


The Wizard asks whether you have heard the sound. Always Click *Yes*. You will return to the Audio Diagnostic panel.

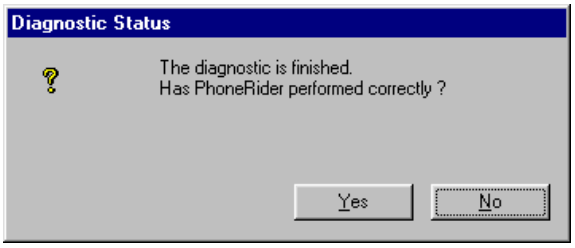
Click *Next*.



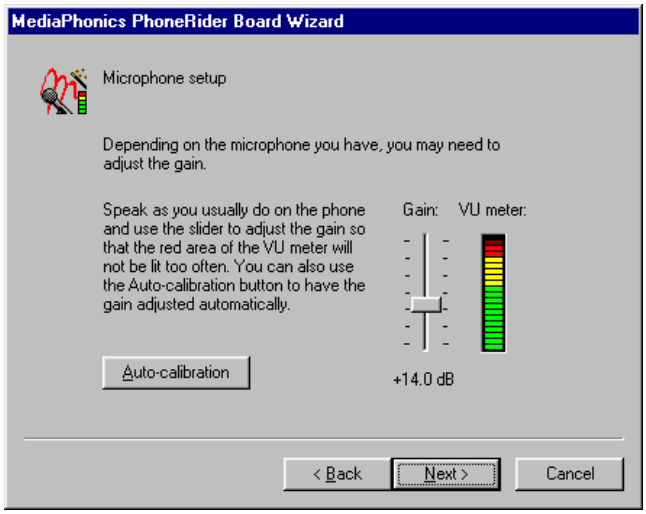
The **Line and Speakerphone Diagnostic** is displayed. Press the *Test the line and speakerphone* button.



The **Diagnostic Status** window opens. If the board is correctly configured you can hear the card click. Click *Stop* to end the test.

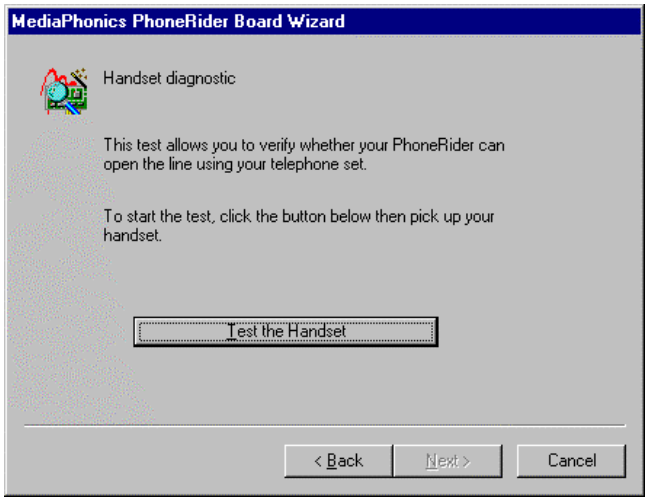


The Wizard asks if it performed correctly. Click *Yes*. You will return to the **Line and speakerphone Diagnostic** panel. Click *Next*.

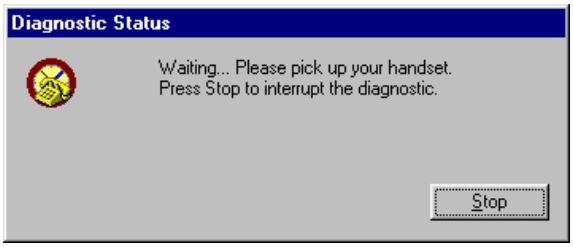


The **Microphone setup** panel appears. It allows you to finely adjust the microphone gain.

Click *Next*.

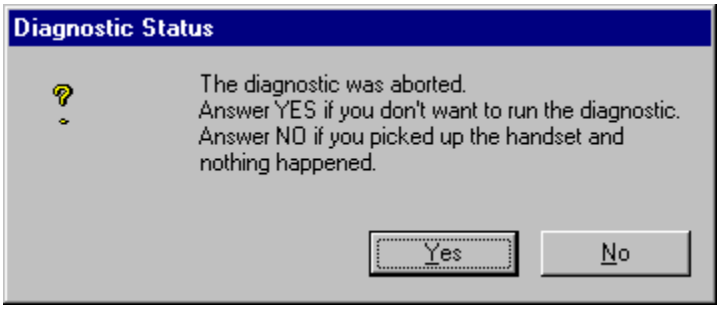


The **Handset diagnostic** panel opens. Press the *Test the Handset* button.



The **Diagnostic Status** panel appears inviting you to pick up the handset.

Immediately click *Stop*.



The Wizard asks if you have heard the dial tone or if you want to abort diagnostics. Click *Yes*. You will return to the **Handset Diagnostic** panel**.**

Then click *Next*.

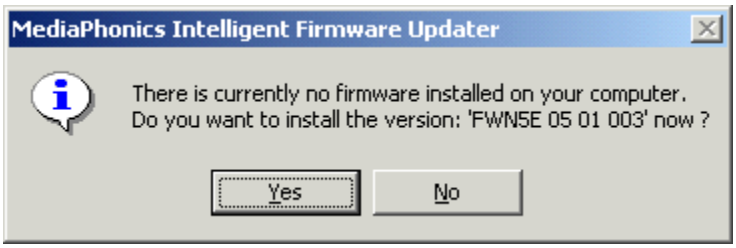
The Wizard informs you that the setup is finished. Press the *Finish* button, to leave the Wizard.

The setup is finished.

Continue with ICOM\400 Voice Installation.

PhoneRider Installation under Windows 2000

Load the latest drivers for the PhoneRider board using the CD provided by Pinnacle Business Systems. Select Run from the Start menu and run X:\ICOM400\ICOMVoice\Win2000\ FWN5E0501003.exe (where X is the CD-ROM drive) or browse the CD-ROM drive to find the program in the mentioned folder.

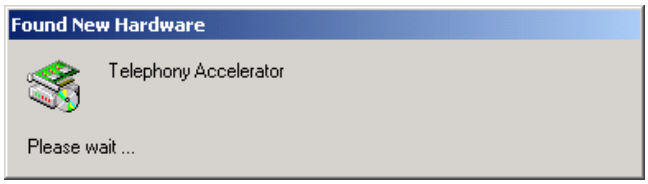


This will create a folder with the latest drivers.

Follow the prompts until asked if you want to install the version even though there is no firmware installed, ***Click No*** and continue with instructions below.

Shut down and turn off the computer. Install the PhoneRider board.

Turn the PC on. When Windows 2000 starts, the plug and play driver finds the new hardware.



The first panel informs you that the plug and play has **Found New Hardware.**

Just wait for the next panel.

The **Found New Hardware Wizard** appears informing you it will search for new drivers for MediaPhonics PhoneRider Card v1.2.

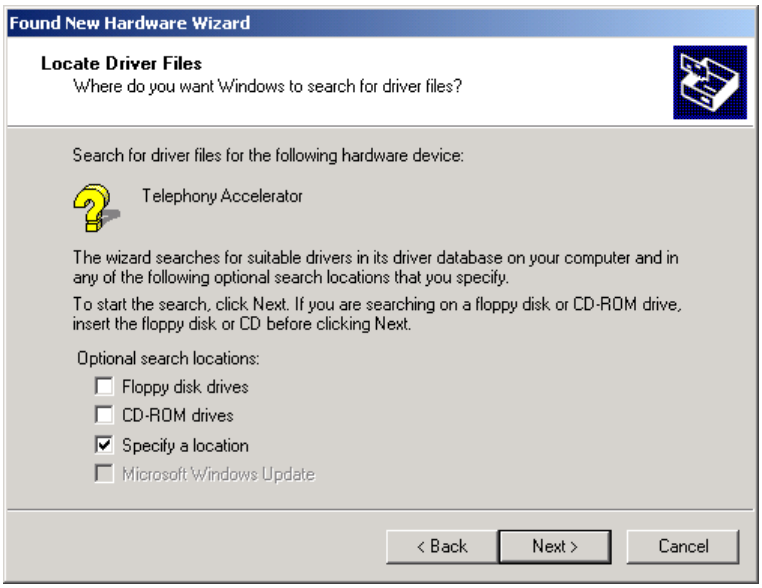
Click *Next* button

The next panel tells you it is looking for the driver to run this new device.

Select the radio button **Search a suitable driver for my device (recommended)**.

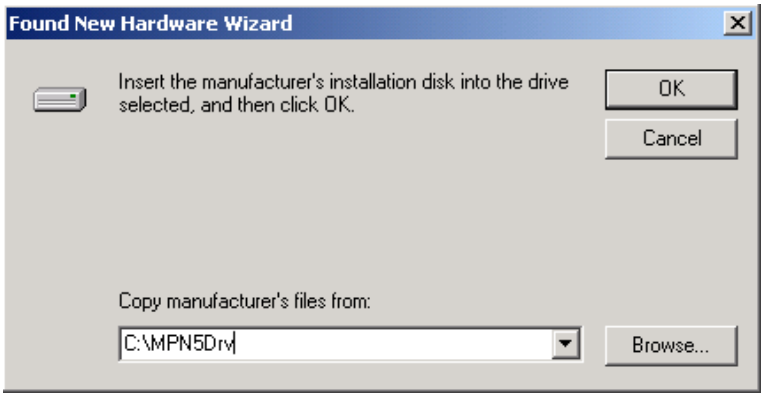
Then click on the *Next* button

Note: This option is normally selected by default.



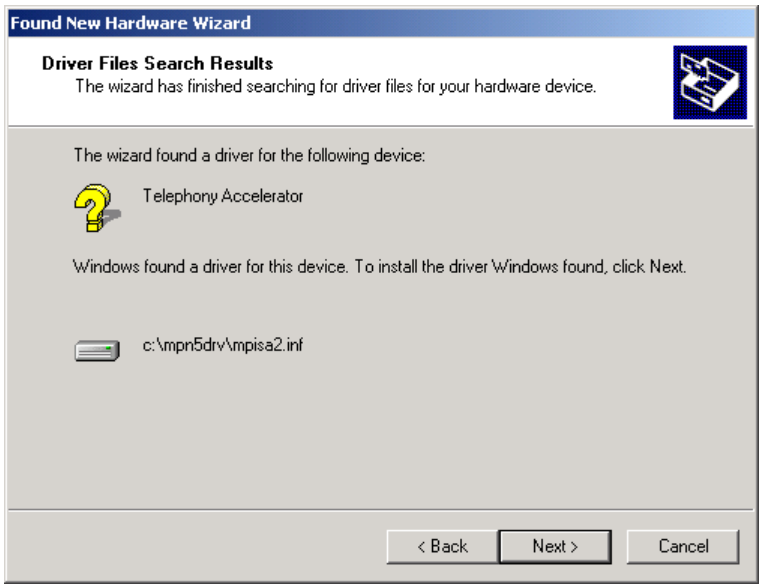
The fourth panel allows you to select the location of the PhoneRider drivers. Select the *Specify a location* check box only.

Then click *Next* button



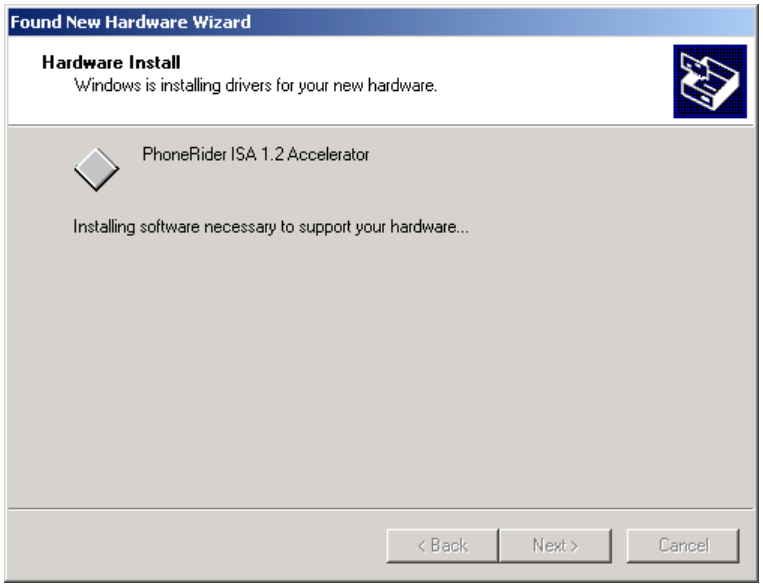
Specify the path as shown in the example.

And finally click the *OK* button
The driver will be searched.



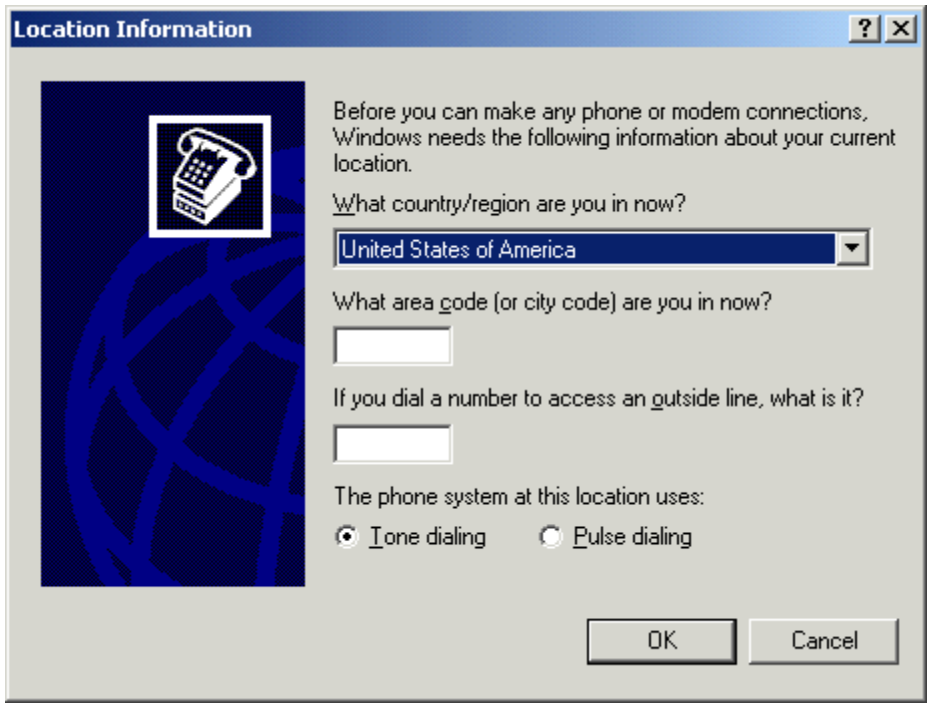
The driver for this device has been recognized in the selected directory.

Click *Next* button.



A small panel "Copying Files" will appear briefly to show the copying progress.

Wait while the wizard is installing the driver for the PhoneRider ISA 1.2 Accelerator.



At this point there are a lot of panels on the screen. If the ***Location Information*** panel is shown, enter your area code then click OK. Then click OK again on the ***Phone And Modem Options*** panel.

The Wizard informs you then that Windows has installed the software required for the PhoneRider Accelerator.

Do not press *Finish* or reboot until the PhoneRider board Wizard described below has completed.

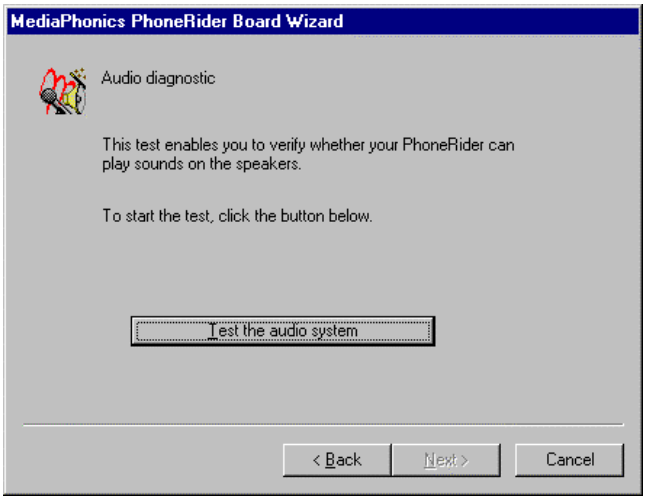
Despite of the label "Finish" on the button, the installation procedure will continue.

The PhoneRider Board Wizard opens automatically. If an error occurs during the Wizard, reboot and start the Wizard from the Start/Programs menu and continue below.

PhoneRider board Wizard

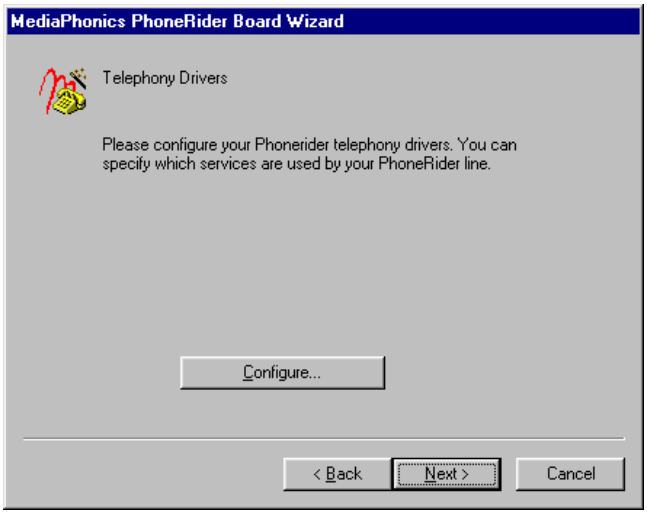
The **MediaPhonics PhoneRider Board Wizard** may appear when Windows opens after restarting the PC. On the **Welcome** panel, click *Next*.

The second panel offers you the possibility to automatically register through MediaPhonics Web page. Click *Next*.



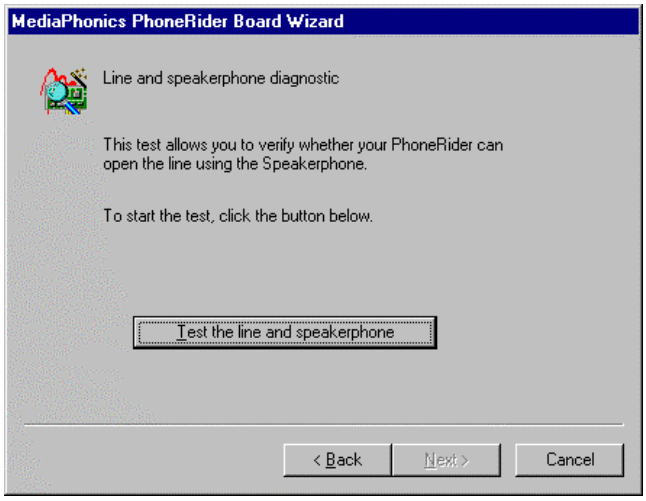
The **Audio diagnostic** panel appears.

Click *Next.*

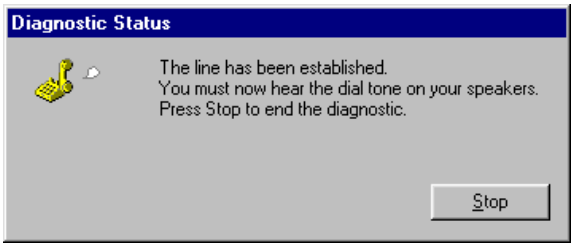


The **Telephony Drivers** panel opens.

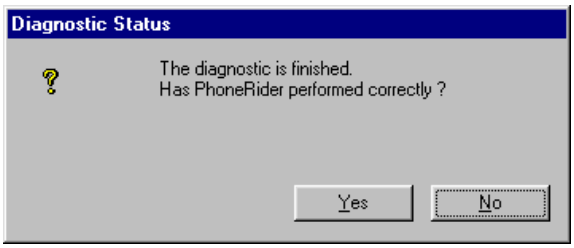
Click Next.



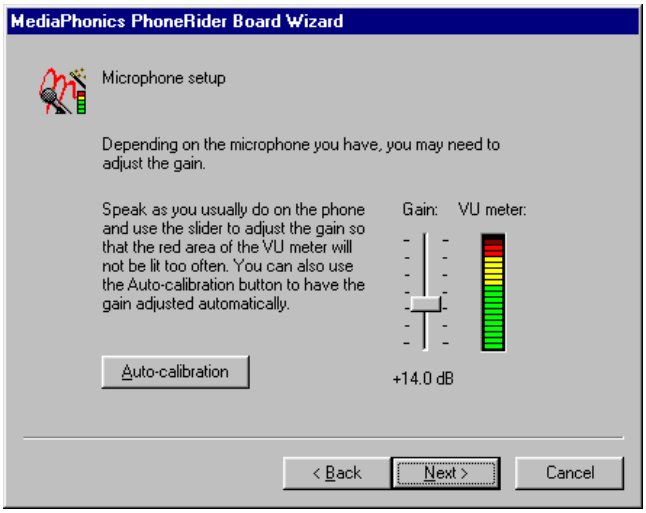
The **Line and Speakerphone Diagnostic** is displayed. Press the *Test the line and speakerphone* button.



The **Diagnostic Status** window opens. If the board is correctly configured you can hear the card click. Click *Stop* to end the test.

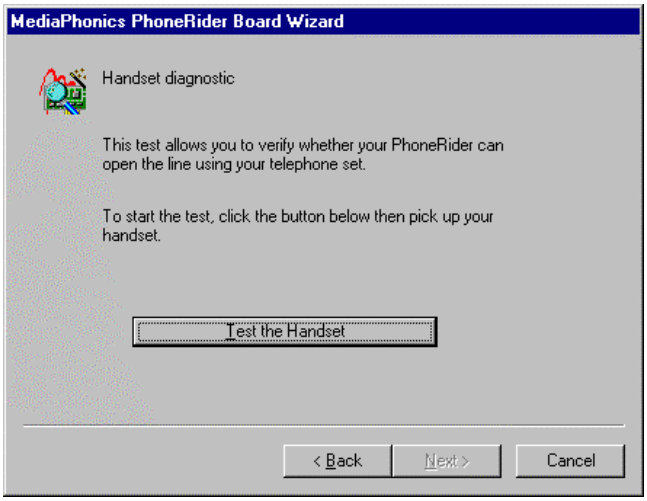


The Wizard asks if it performed correctly. Click *Yes*. You will return to the **Line and speakerphone Diagnostic** panel.
Click *Next*.

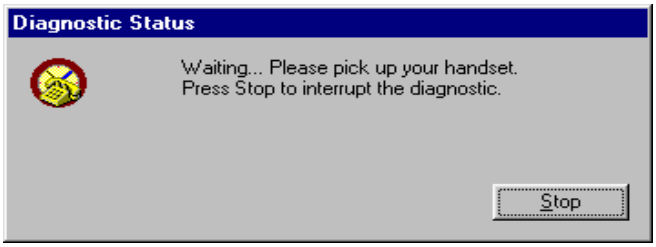


The **Microphone setup** panel appears. It allows you to finely adjust the microphone gain.

Click *Next*.

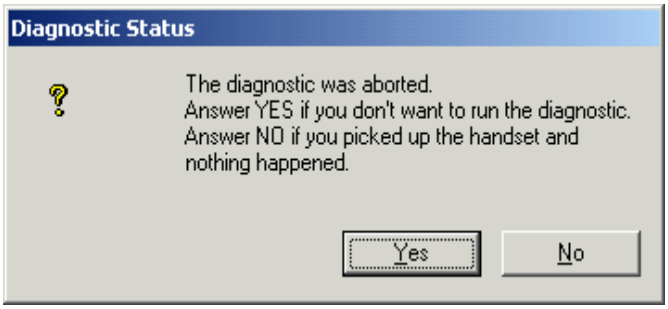


The **Handset diagnostic** panel opens. Press the *Test the Handset* button.



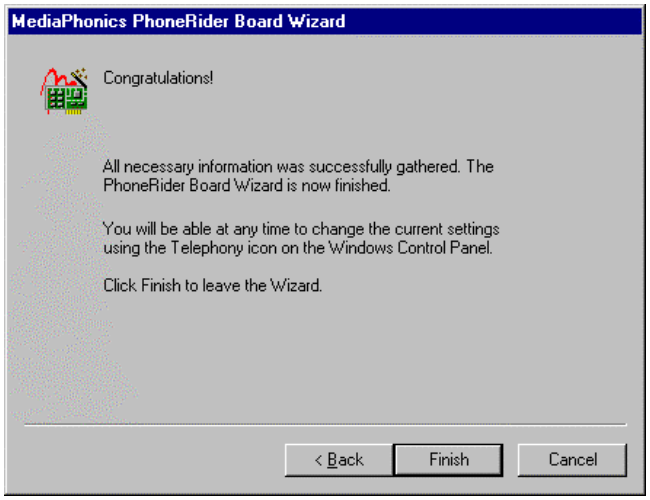
The **Diagnostic Status** panel appears inviting you to pick up the handset.

Immediately click *Stop*.



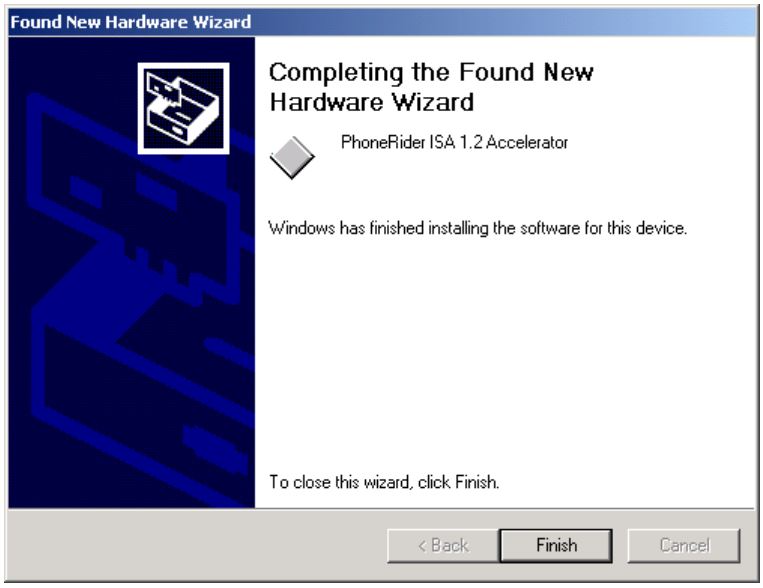
The Wizard asks if you have heard the dial tone or if you want to abort diagnostics. Click *Yes*. You will return to the **Handset Diagnostic** panel**.**

Then click *Next*.



The Wizard informs you that the setup is finished. Press the *Finish* button, to leave the Wizard.

The setup is finished.



This panel should still exist.

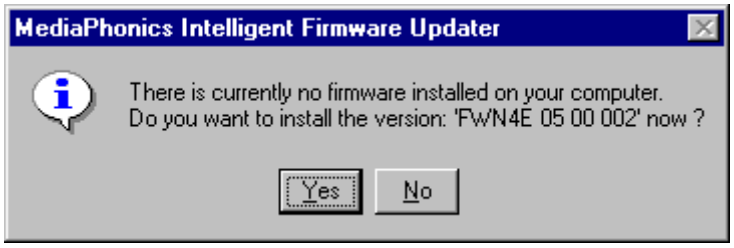
Press the *Finish* button.

Reboot when prompted.

Continue with ICOM\400 Voice Installation.

PhoneRider Installation under Windows NT 4.0

Load the latest drivers for the PhoneRider board using the CD provided by Pinnacle Business Systems. Select Run from the Start menu and run X:\ICOM400\ICOMVoice\WinNt\ FWN4E0500002.exe (where X is the CD-ROM drive) or browse the CD-ROM drive to find the program in the mentioned folder.



This will create a folder with the latest drivers.

Follow the prompts until asked if you want to install the version even though there is no firmware installed, ***Click No*** and continue with instructions below.

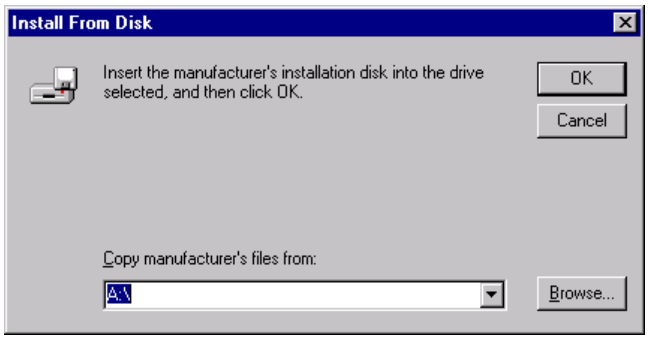
It is necessary to first install the PnP (Plug n Play) function for Windows NT 4.0. To determine whether PnP is installed, the pnpisa.sys file will exist in the C:\WINNT\system32\drivers folder. If PnP is not already installed, follow the next 2 steps.

1. Using the CD provided by Pinnacle Business Systems locate file **pnpisa.inf** in the Icom400\ICOMVoice\WinNt folder. It may be the one without the .inf extension. Right click on the file and select Install.
2. Reboot when prompted.

When the PnP function is installed, shut down and turn off the computer. Install the PhoneRider board. Then turn the PC on.
When Windows NT 4.0 starts, a ***Building driver information database*** panel appears showing the progress of the procedure.

Then the ***New Hardware Found*** panel appears.

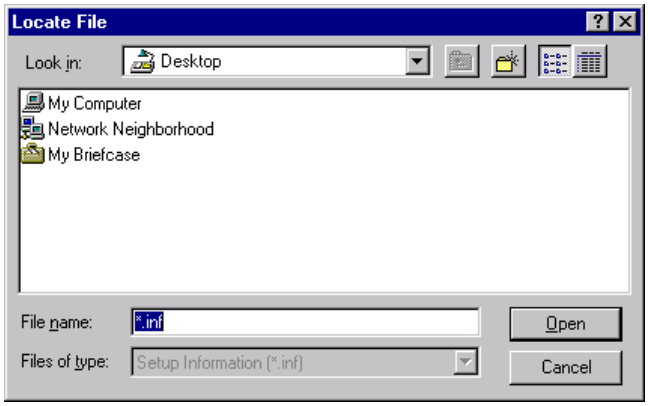
Select the *Driver from disk provided by hardware manufacturer* option and then click OK.



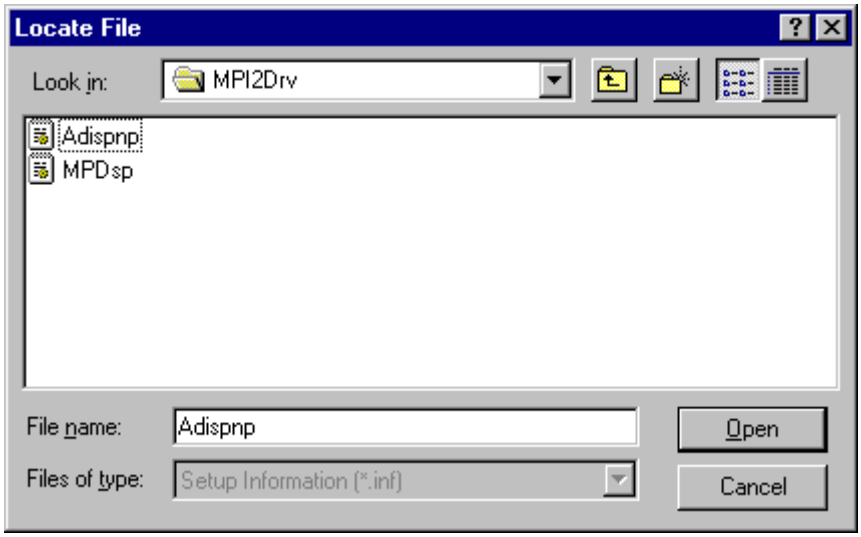
The ***Install From Disk*** dialog box opens.

Click *Browse* or directly type in *C:\MPI2DRV*. If the path was entered the next panel will be ***Select Device.***

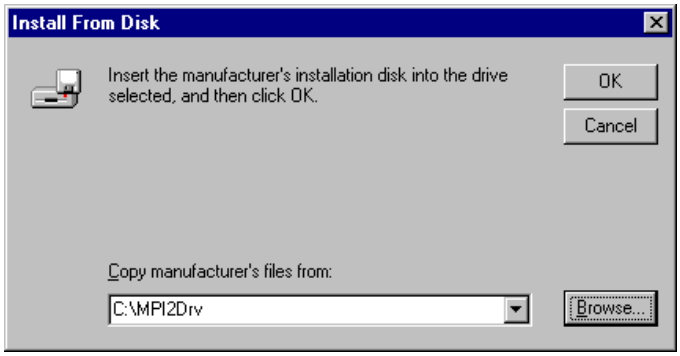
The ***Locate File*** assert opens. Click Cancel.



In the ***Locate File*** dialog box that is displayed, find the *C:\MPI2DRV* folder.

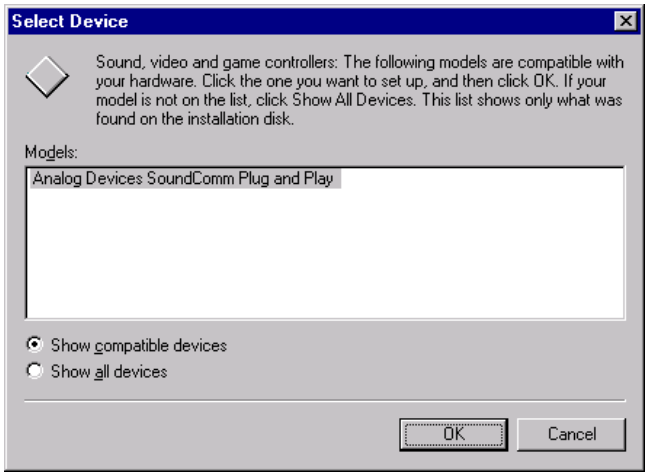


You should see the following files in the MPI2DRV folder. You do not need to select any of them, just click Open.

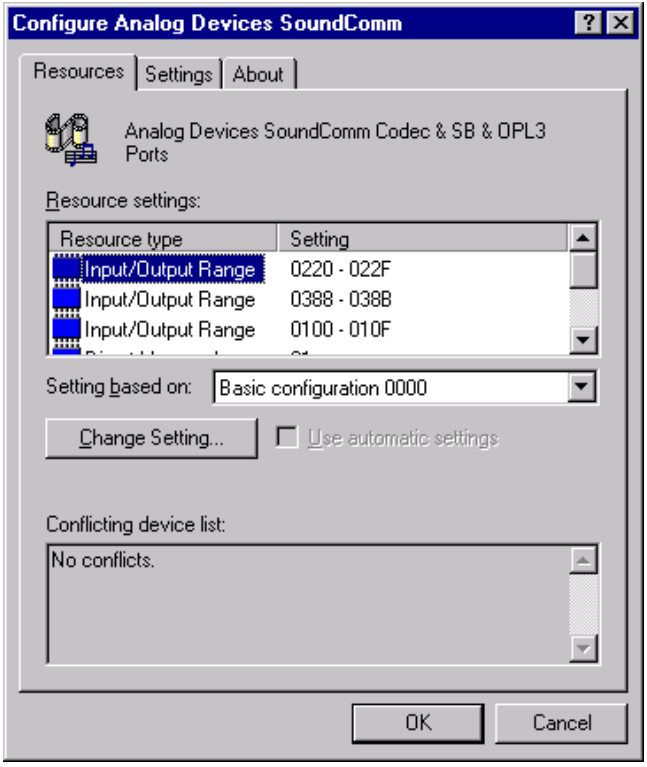


The selected path is shown in the ***Install From Disk*** dialog box.

Click OK.



On the following ***Select Device*** dialog box simply click OK.



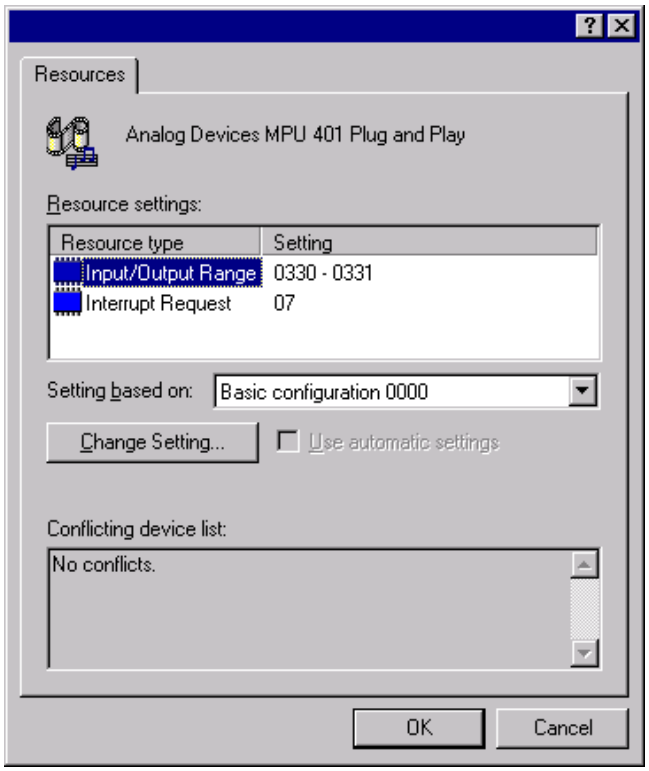
The system will show that files are copied.

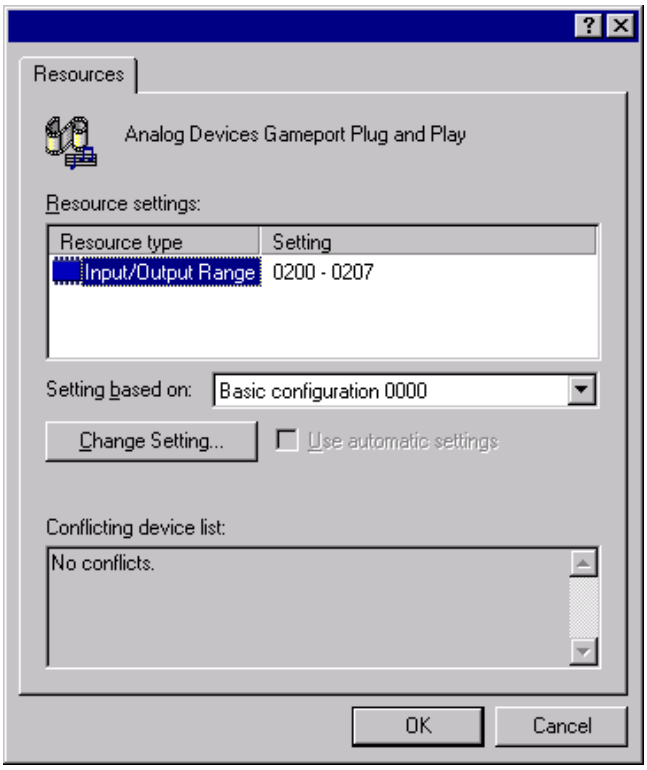
When the ***Configure Analog Devices SoundComm*** panel appears, check for conflicts on resources and if you find any, resolve them. Then click OK.

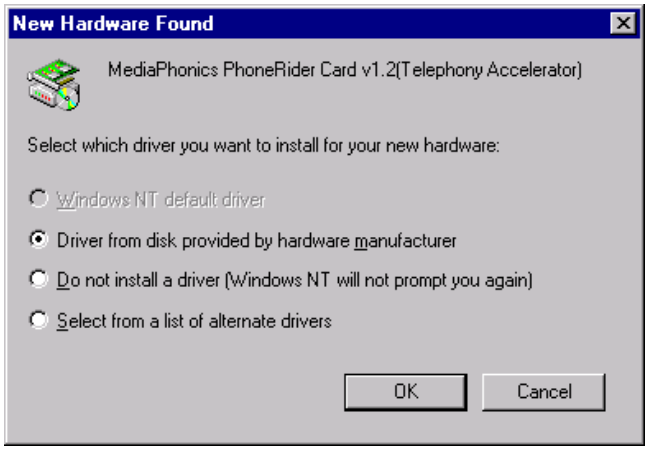
Resolving conflicts:

To resolve any conflicts here or on the following panels, select the next Basic configuration nnnn entry from the drop down menu for the ***Setting based on:*** option until no conflicts exist.

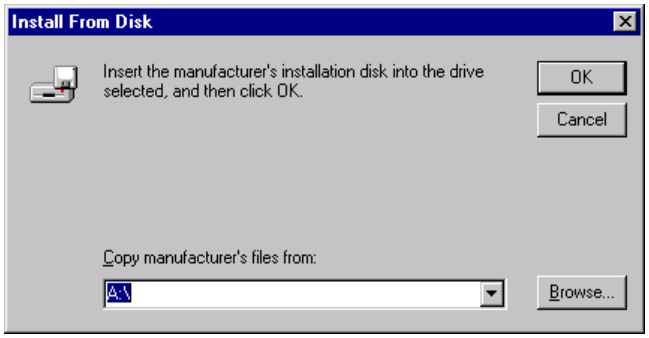
Do the same on the following two panels.







When this panel appears, select the *Driver from disk provided by hardware manufacturer* option and then click OK.

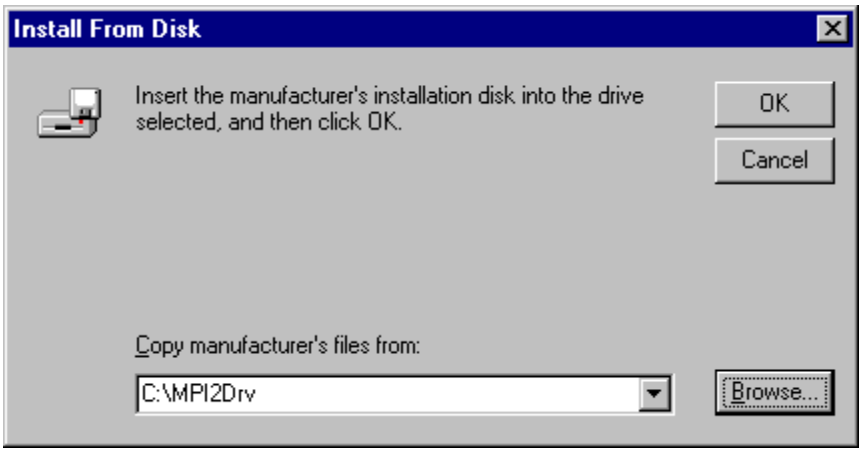


On the ***Install From Disk*** dialog box, click *Browse* or directly type in *C:\MPI2DRV*. If the path was entered the next panel will be ***Select Device.***

When the ***Locate File*** assert opens, click Cancel.

In the ***Locate File*** dialog box that is displayed, find the *C:\MPI2DRV* folder.

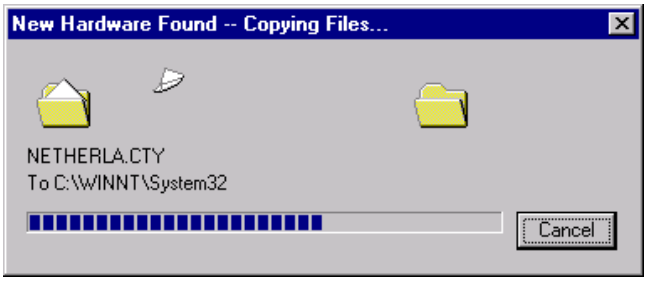
You should then see the files in the MPI2DRV folder shown in the picture. You do not need to select any of them. Simply click Open.



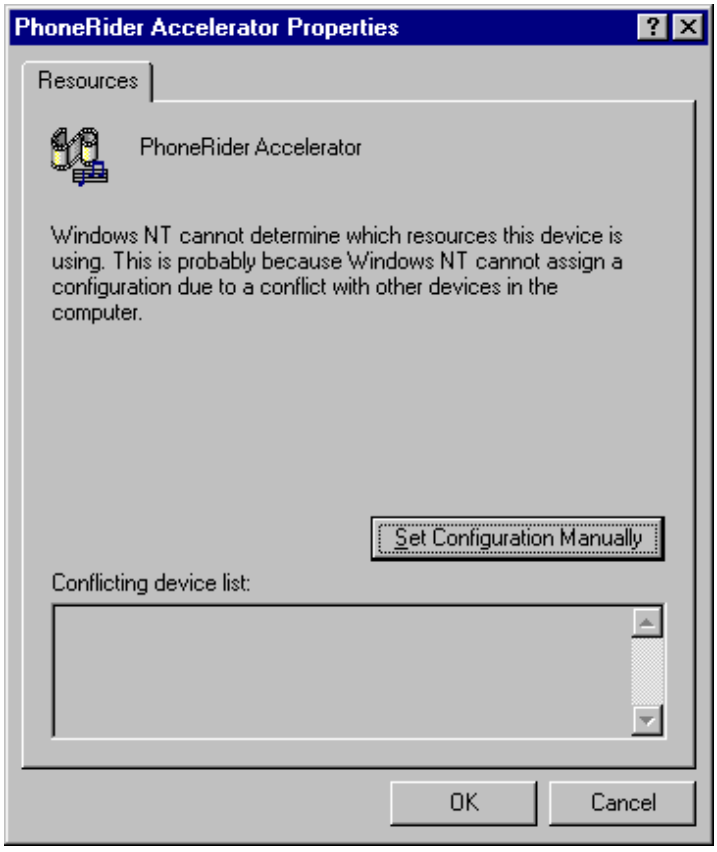
The selected path is shown in the ***Install From Disk*** dialog box.

Click *Ok*.

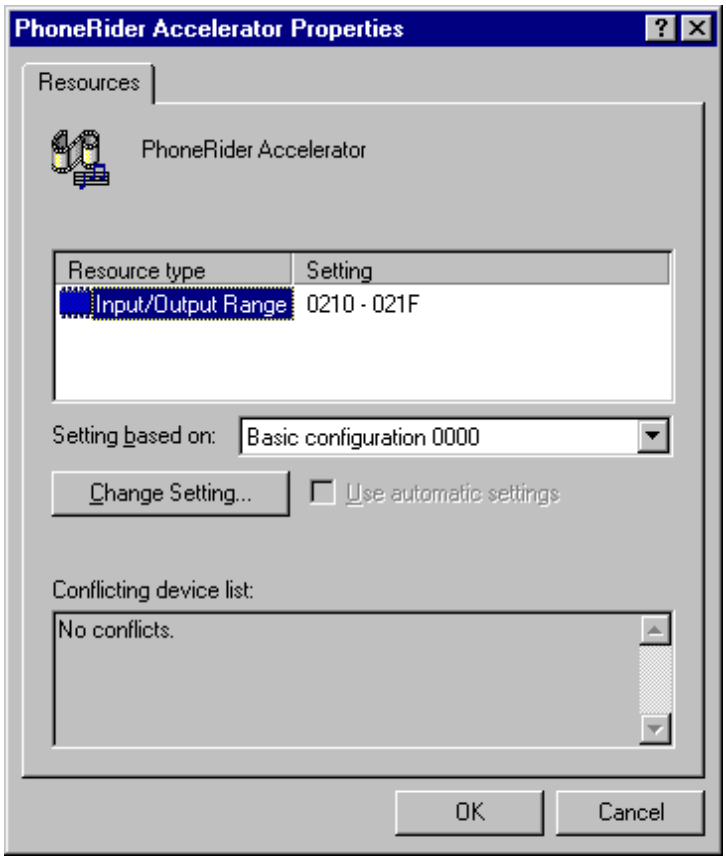
Simply click OK on this panel.



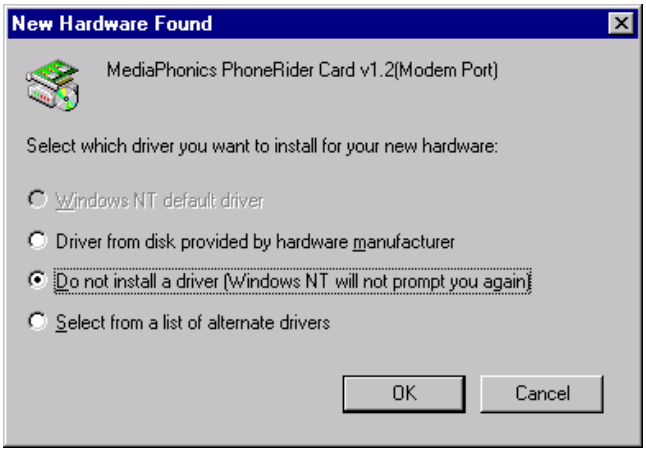
The system will show that files are copied.



Then, the ***PhoneRider Accelerator Properties*** panel appears. Click the ***Set Configuration Manually*** button.

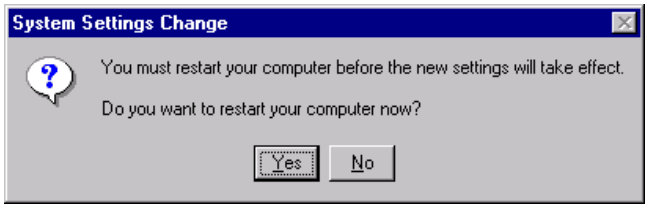


Click OK if no conflict is signaled. Otherwise, resolve the conflict(s) and then confirm by OK.



The panel shown here will appear only if the PhoneRider board that is being installed has the EPROM number 0305 (the four last digits of the HW version number). It does not appear if the PhoneRider board that is being installed is specifically intended for Windows NT 4.0 and its EPROM number is 0306. If this panel is shown, select the ***Do not install a driver*** option.

Then click OK.



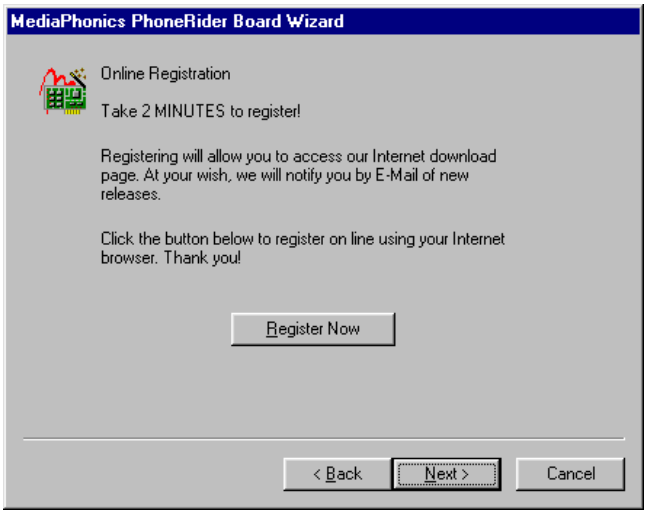
When you are prompted to reboot your PC, click Yes to do so.

The installation is finished.

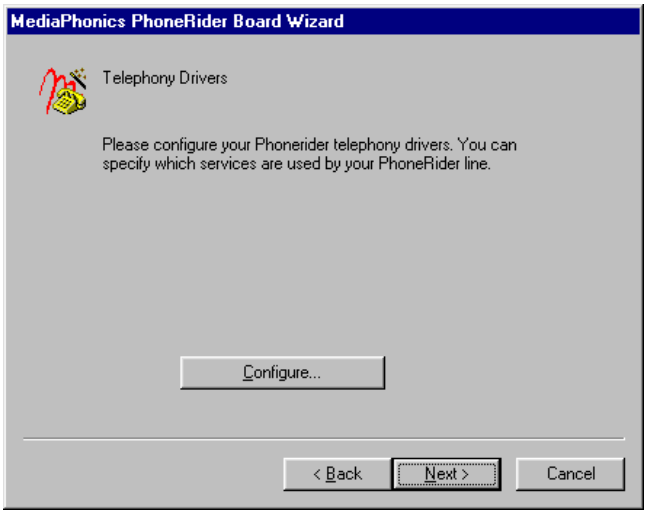
Continue with the PhoneRider board Wizard.

PhoneRider board Wizard

The **MediaPhonics PhoneRider Board Wizard** appears when Windows opens after restarting the PC.
On the **Welcome** panel, click *Next*.

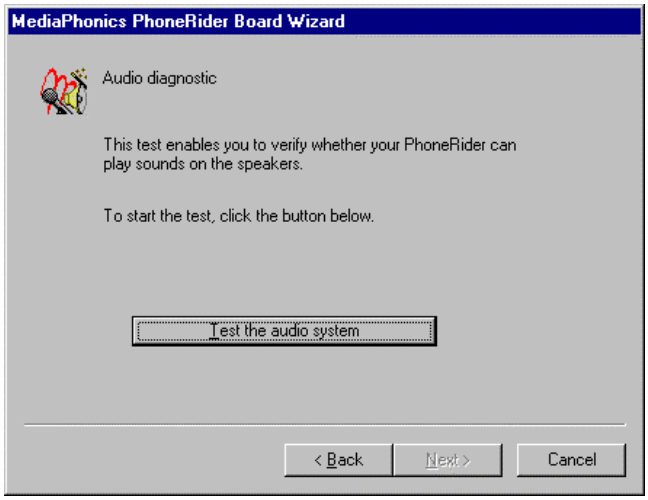


The second panel offers you the possibility to automatically register through MediaPhonics Web page. Click *Next*.

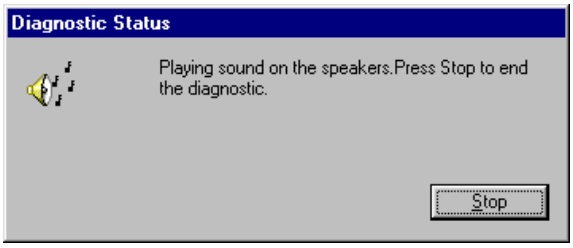


The **Telephony Drivers** panel opens.

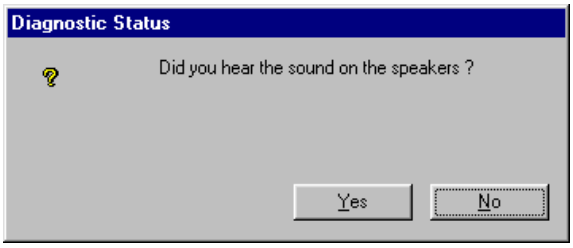
Click Next.



The **Audio diagnostic** panel appears. Press the *Test the audio system* button even though you will not hear any audio.

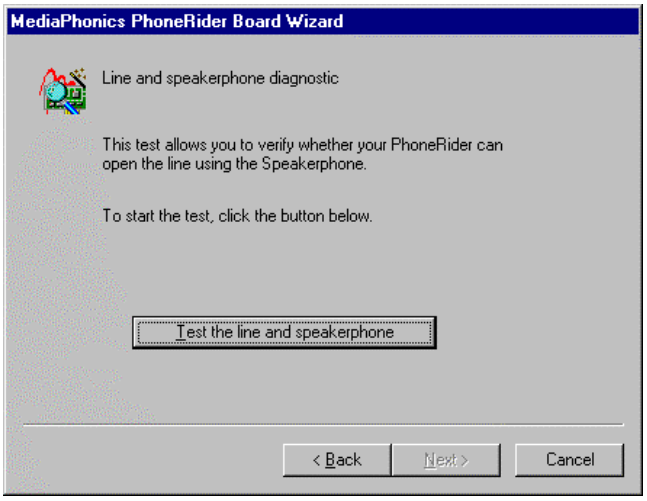


The *Diagnostic Status* window opens. Click *Stop.*

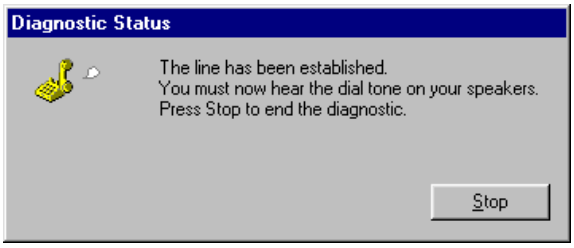


The Wizard asks whether you have heard the sound. Always Click *Yes*. You will return to the Audio Diagnostic panel.

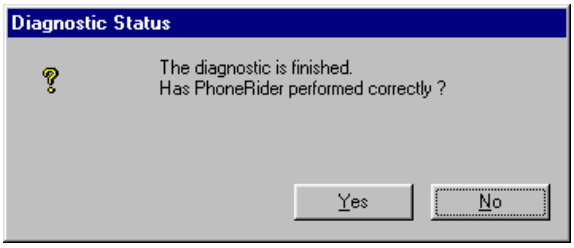
Click *Next*.



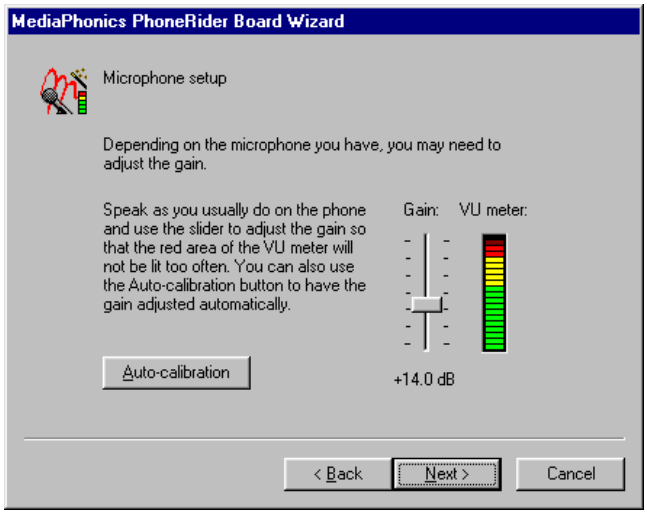
The **Line and Speakerphone Diagnostic** is displayed. Press the *Test the line and speakerphone* button.



The **Diagnostic Status** window opens. If the board is correctly configured you can hear the card click. Click *Stop* to end the test.

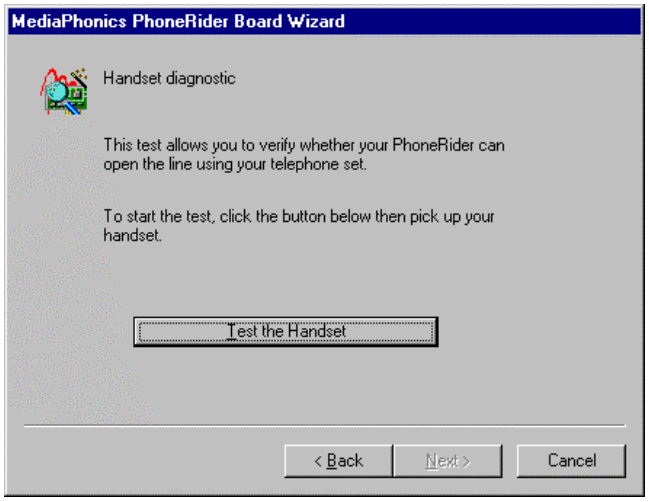


The Wizard asks if it performed correctly. Click *Yes*. You will return to the **Line and speakerphone Diagnostic** panel. Click *Next*.

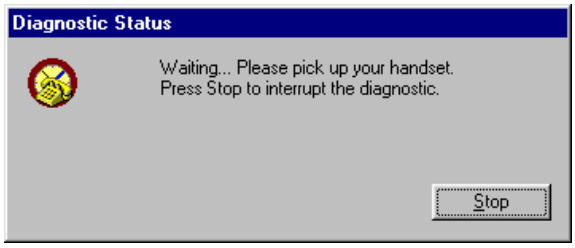


The **Microphone setup** panel appears. It allows you to finely adjust the microphone gain.

Click *Next*.

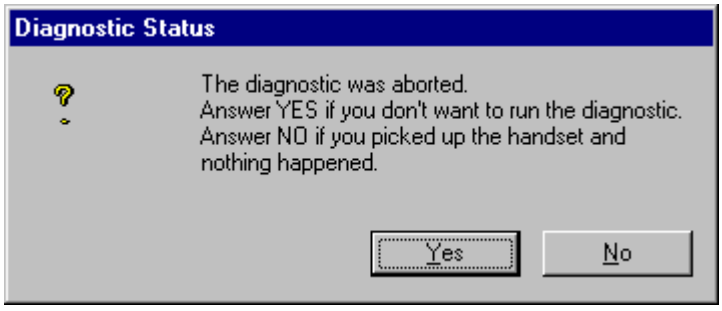


The **Handset diagnostic** panel opens. Press the *Test the Handset* button.



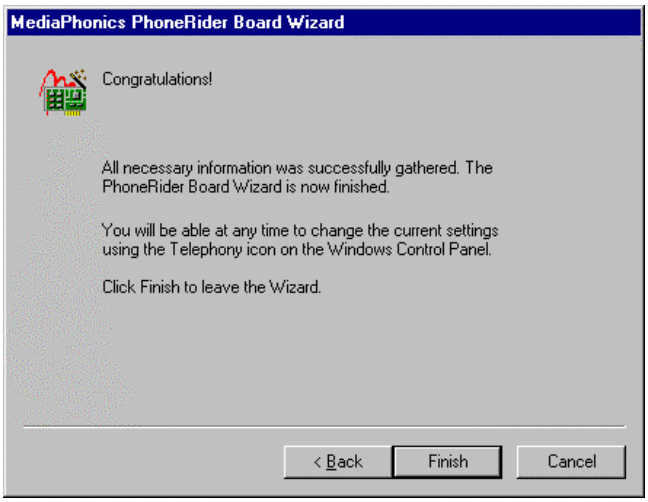
The **Diagnostic Status** panel appears inviting you to pick up the handset.

Immediately click *Stop*.



The Wizard asks if you have heard the dial tone or if you want to abort diagnostics. Click *Yes*. You will return to the **Handset Diagnostic** panel**.**

Then click *Next*.



The Wizard informs you that the setup is finished. Press the *Finish* button, to leave the Wizard.

The setup is finished.

Continue with ICOM\400 Voice Installation.

Appendix E - *INFO Exit Program Reference

The *INFO type allows a user exit program to be in control of the dialogue between the AS/400 and the person on the phone. Within the ICOMTOOLS source file found in the ICOMTOOLS library are two sample programs that will help you understand how this process works. The source members start with PARTDEMO and SAYSTATUS. The SAYSTATUS sample program is the equivalent to the ICMCSTS program that is used in the SAMPLE2 menu.

In the PARTDEMOC program you can see that it first generates the message to be played "Enter the part number followed by the pound sign." Once that message is played and the person keys in the part number then pound, the program is called again with the part number. The program then calls the look up program to find out how many are in stock and then generates another message to be played "There are 19 available for part number 1 2 3, U joint." This process is repeated until the user hangs up. Next is the list of parameters that are needed by the exit program and an explanation of their use. They must be used in this order and with this field length.

ID	Char	10
Pass reply	Char	4
Step	Char	10
Message	Char	1000
Program value	Char	10
Phone Response	Char	100
Return code	Char	1

- **ID**: This is the Identifier found within the definition of the user code that was entered by the person on the phone. This ID could help the exit program to know who is initiating the call.
- **Pass reply: *YES** means that the exit program will be called twice. (Once to ask the person on the phone for a number such as part, salesperson, or a selection. Then a second time that will have the phone response.) ***NO** means that the exit program will be called once. For instance, this may be used to retrieve the current sales for the week or play the current CPU utilization.
- **Step:** This field lets the exit program know whether it is the first or second time that it is being called. This field will contain *MSG if it is the first time being called or *RSP if it is the second. Refer to the Pass reply parameter to find out more about when the program is called once or twice.
- **Message**: The exit program generates a message to be played and updates this field with the text. This field can be blank in the second call.
- **Program value**: This field is used by the exit program to help know what to do in case it has multiple functions. This field can be almost anything. The value found in the menu item is basically the starting point and can be changed by the exit program in order to do something different the next time it is called. Changing the value by the exit program does not actually change the value in the menu item. The PARTDEMOC sample program is a good example.

Call 1:Step=*MSG (Pass reply is *YES)
Program value in=PART&ORD
Program value out=PART&ORD
Message out=Enter the part number followed by the pound sign.
Call 2:Step=*RSP
Phone response=123
Program value in=PART&ORD
Program value out=ACCOUNT
Message out=There are 19 available for part number 1 2 3, U joint.
Return code=1(repeat the process)
Call 3:Step=*MSG

Program value in=ACCOUNT
Program value out=ACCOUNT
Message out=To order the part enter your account number followed by the pound sign.

Call 4:Step=*RSP
Phone response=9876
Program value in=ACCOUNT
Program value out=PART&ORD
Message out=Part ordered.
Return code=1(repeat the process)

By changing the value back to PART&ORD the process can be repeated. In the sample program you will find for Call 3: that if the account number has already been entered then the Program value is changed to ORDER and the person is asked to press 1 to order the part.

- **Phone response:** The numbers entered by the person on the phone. This value will be passed into the exit program during the *RSP step.
- **Return code**: "1" should be used to repeat the process.

Sample programs

There are two sets of sample programs to aid in creating other exit programs to be used to gather information from a person on a phone or to give the person information such as sales figures or system information. These sample programs are in the ICOMTOOLS/ICOMTOOLS file. The members begin with PARTDEMO and SAYSTATUS. If the ICOMTOOLS library does not exist then restore it from savefile TOOLS in the ICOM400 library.

1. Part demo
   Program to call: PARTDEMOC from ICOMTOOLS library.
   Pass reply should be set to "*YES"
   Program values: *PART* - Checks availability of an auto part. Use part number 123, 234, 345, 8 or 9.
   PART&ORD - Checks availability of an auto part then allows ordering. Use part number 123, 234, 345, 8 or 9.
   TICKET - Checks the status of vehicle being serviced. Use ticket 8 or 9.

2. Say status (plays list of jobs, number of jobs in subsystem, etc.)
   The SAMPLE2 menu uses ICMCSTS which is equivalent to the SAYSTATUS source found in ICOMTOOLS. This source is provided for you to change or add to depending on your needs.
   Program to call: SAYSTATUSC from ICOMTOOLS library.
   Program values: *LISTJOBS* - Lists jobs in subsystem QINTER or QBATCH.
   Pass reply should be set to *YES.
   SBSJOBCNT - Gives the number of active jobs in subsystem QINTER or QBATCH.
   Pass reply should be set to *YES.
   JOBCOUNT - Gives the number of jobs in a job queue.
   Pass reply should be set to *YES.
   SPLFCOUNT - Gives the number of spooled files in output queue QPRINT or PRT01.
   Pass reply should be set to *YES.
   CPUPERCENT - Gives the % of CPU utilization.
   Pass reply should be set to *NO.

Frequently Asked Questions

This section lists questions frequently posed to Pinnacle's technical support staff regarding ICOM/400. If you have a question, please read through this FAQ before calling our technical support. You may find the answer you are looking for.

Can ICOM/400 be integrated into a job scheduler?

A. Yes, you can specifically send a pager message if a job has ended normally or abnormally from IBM's job scheduler (IJS) or Pinnacle's Job/Manager products. You can also run ICOM/400 commands inside any job-scheduling product.

Example: Using the Change Pager Command using Job Scheduler

An example paging command is shown below. The command is the Send Message using ICM (SNDMSGICM) command used with ICOM/400.

```
                Change Pager Command using JS (CHGPGRJS)


Type choices, press Enter.

Pager command  . . . . . .   SNDMSGICM TOUSER(&RCP) MSG('&MSGTXT')
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________
```

Changing the Paging Command

In this example there are two substitution variables, &RCP (the recipient of the pager message) and &MSGTXT (the message that you are sending). The substitution values for these substitution variables come from the ADDJOBJS, CHGJOBJS and SBMJOBJS commands, PGRRCPNORM and PGRRCPABN parameters. Note: When using with ICOM/400, you will need to create a "dummy" recipient called QIJS so IJS will use ICOM/400's command. You will not have to use this "dummy" recipient for anything, it just needs to be in the recipient file for ICOM/400.

When I upgrade from an old version of Page/Manager or ICOM/400 to a new version of ICOM/400, do I have to retype in all my data again?

A. No, the installation program for ICOM/400 is designed to copy your files from Page/Manager to the files in ICOM/400 or if you are already using ICOM/400 and you are just installing the newest release of ICOM/400, the install program will save the data files while installing the new software so you will not lose any data that you have already typed in previously.

See Chapter 2 in the ICOM/400 manual - "ICOM Installation" for further information on how to install ICOM/400.

Why do I keep getting an error when I send an email through ICOM/400?

A. There are basically 4 things that you need to have right to get the email feature to function correctly:

- TCP/IP running on your AS/400.
- Your AS/400 has to be able to connect to an ISP or internal mail server. (Try pinging or telneting to the IP address or name to see if you get a good verification.)
- If you have an internal mail server you need to make sure it can receive mail from your AS/400.
- A working email address.

The fastest way to see what is going on with email is to take the option to display or print email communications. To do this, go to the ICOM/400 main menu (GO ICM), take an option 5(Display history information), take option 10 to display email communications or select option 11 to print communications.

For further instructions: In the ICOM/400 manual - See Chapter 6 for setting up an *EMAIL delivery type for a recipient and Chapter 9 for setting up your system attributes for email.

How do I know what version of ICOM/400 I'm running?

A. Run this command to display a data area: **DSPDTAARA ICOM400/ICMPRM.** The first 2 digits of the 4 character data area tells you what version number you are for the ICOM/400 release. (i.e. - "1210" means that you are on version 1.2).

What types of modems work with ICOM/400?

A. First and foremost you must know that for paging you have to use a modem that is set to asynchronous. There are many different types of modems that will work with ICOM/400. For paging we recommend these IBM models: **5853, 7855** or **7852** which can all be set to asynchronous. You can also use a store bought asynchronous modem, for example a Hayes or U.S. Robotics, but you will need to install a setup string that we have in our manual to take off some factory defaults to be able to use it with the AS/400. You can install the setup string from a PC using a modem program such as: Terminal, HyperTerminal or ProComm.

For faxing you will have to use a class 2-data/faxing modem which can be used for paging as well. It will still need the setup string that we recommend.

For further instructions about modems and about the setup strings: See ICOM/400 manual Chapter 2 - "Modem Configurations" or see our list of modems in our Quick Start Wizard. See ICOM/400 manual Chapter 2 - "Quick Start Wizard "

Is there any way to page using a modem set to synchronous?

A. Normally most all modems are not able to do this, but there is one IBM modem that is capable of doing this: The IBM **7852** is able to receive any asynchronous pages going out while still set to synchronous. The only condition is: you will have to be on an OS/400 version of 3.7 or above. If you are using the 1.2 version of the ICOM/400 software, it will create the line description automatically according to what release of the operating system you are on. If you are using 1.0 release of ICOM400 then you will need to run a **CHGLINASC ICOM400** command and put a **END** in the "Set modem to ASYNC" parameter. The only drawback of the 1.0 version is if the ICOM400 line description was ever deleted then you would need to repeat the process all over again.

For further instructions on how to set up the 7852 and other modems: See ICOM/400 manual - Chapter 2 "Modem Configurations".

Is there any way to page my numeric pager directly instead of using TAP?

A. Yes, we have a recipient delivery type of *PHONE that can be used to dial a phone number to send tones. It can also be used to dial your numeric pager directly from your modem and send a numbered message with no tones. We do recommend however, that you use alphanumeric pagers to get text messages instead of numbers to be able to get the full effect of ICOM/400.

For further information on message delivery types: See Chapter 6 of ICOM/400 manual - "Recipients".

How do I stop duplicate messages from paging me?

A. If you are using a message queue or QHST monitor, ICOM/400 is designed to check for new messages in the message queue or QHST log at the intervals you specify. After it has check for new messages and taken appropriate actions through ICOM/400, the message will not be used again. So, basically you will get only one action taken per new message. If there are duplicate messages then it could be one of two things:

- Reply messages - If you get notified for an inquiry message and then someone replies to the message, you might get 2 notifications for one message because the same message has 2 different message types. One is an *INQ and the other is an *REPLY. What you will need to do is create a sequence in your setup to exclude all *REPLY messages in the "message type" parameter.
- Check your message queue or QHST log against our "Work with History" screen and make sure that for every message in the message queue or QHST log that met your setup criteria, there is only one notification record in our history file by date and time. If the messages match up with the "Work with History" records and you are using a pager, then check with your pager company. It might be that they for some reason have sent the one page duplicate times. This might also be true by sending pages using the SNDMSGICM command and not from a monitor.

For further information on how to set up exclusions - See Chapter 8 "System monitors"
For further information on how to "Work with History" - See Chapter 4

How do I stop getting messages I don't want when using a message queue or QHST monitor?

A. You can setup a sequence of "exclusions" inside your monitor setup that will exclude the messages you tell it to. You can set it up by message id, type, program name, job name, user name and severity limit. The message sequences that are exclusions are evaluated first in the list of sequences so it doesn't matter what sequence number you put on them.

For more information on setting up exclusions: See ICOM/400 manual - Chapter 8 "System monitors".

How can I keep my users from executing certain functions in ICOM/400?

A. There is a feature in ICOM/400 called function authorities where you can setup by a specific user(s) or *PUBLIC to include or exclude certain functions. For example you might not want a user to be able to delete messages that are in your "Work with history" screen. You could simply change the special value *WRKHST that's in the list of special values on the function authorities screen to

exclude the user from getting into the screen at all. There are also ways of doing partial excludes from the user to a specific function or recipient. So, if for example you wanted a user to be able to display the "Work with History" screen but not delete the message records it could be set up that way.

Note: Anyone with *SECOFR class and/or *ALLOBJ authority will override this feature.

For more information on function authorities: See ICOM/400 manual - Chapter 9 "System Controls".

Also see the section of Chapter 6 (Recipients) : "Edit recipient authority" to set up user authorities on specific recipients.

Can I use ICOM/400 to page my alphanumeric pager without using a modem?

A. Yes, with ICOM/400's email feature and a pager company that supports this kind of paging, you can set it up to send an email to your pager company with a unique email address which in turn will page your pager.

For further instructions: In the ICOM/400 manual - See Chapter 6 for setting up an *EMAIL delivery type for a recipient and Chapter 9 for setting up your system attributes for email.

Can I set up ICOM/400 to page my PCS phone?

A. Yes, there are 2 ways to be able to send to a PCS phone using ICOM/400: 1) Using TAP with the *PAGER delivery type or 2) Setting up an *EMAIL delivery type to email the pager company by way of the internet. Both ways are required to have a pager company that complies to be able to send out pages to a PCS phone after receiving the information from ICOM/400.

For more information on setting up *PAGER and *EMAIL delivery types, see ICOM/400 manual Chapter 6 "Recipients" and Chapter 9 "System controls" to set up system values for sending messages.

Technical Assistance Worksheet

This worksheet should be filled out when you first receive ICOM/400. If you have a problem with the product, this information will enable your customer support representative to help you more effieciently and quickly.

Version of ICOM/400 you are running: _____
Version of OS/400 operating system you are using: _____

ICOM/400 Sales Representative: _____
ICOM/400 Serial number: _____
Type of modem you are using: _____

The exact wording of any messages that appear on your screen, along with the Message ID:
_____
_____

A description of what happened and what you were doing when the problem occurred:
_____
_____

A description of how you tried to solve the problem: _____
_____

- **Be sure to have a printout of the joblog when the problem occurred.**

ICOM/400 Set-up Worksheet

This information must be obtained from each pager company that supplies pagers for your use. This information will be used with the Work with Pager Companies and Change System Attributes displays.

Pager company name:

Contact name (employee):

Address:

Company modem phone number:

Company's password (if any):

Maximum length pager message (1-999):

Modem rate (300, 1200, 2400, 9600, etc):

Parity (even, odd, none):

Data bits (7,8):

Stop bits (1,2):

Duplex support (full, half):

Number of pages per transmission:

E-mail server address:

Mail host port:

ICOM/400 e-mail address:

User name:

Password:

Pager Holder/ID

Name	Pager ID

E-mail Holder/Address

Name	E-mail address

A

Action · 11, 12, 13, 37, 59, 75, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 107, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114
  Adding · 112
Activity
  *SNDSPLF · 51, 52, 53, 124, 126
  *USRMSG · 51, 52, 53
Activity retention days · 121
Additional ICM Log Information · 81
Advanced Set-up · 36
AS/Manager Communication · 168
asynchronous modem · 22, 23, 36
Attaching
  Spooled file or text file · 45
Automated Customer Support · 166
Autostart · 38
Autostart monitors · 121

B

Base on command response · 97, 99, 104
Batch message queue · 119, 124

C

Change command list · 13, 113, 114
Change System Attributes · 17, 36, 37, 38, 61, 62, 71, 119, 120, 133, 156, 216
Compare data
  Changing · 99

D

Delivery method
  *EMAIL · 12, 14, 19, 20, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 53, 56, 57, 58, 112, 132, 150, 151
  *FAX · 14, 19, 20, 45, 47, 48, 56, 57, 60, 150, 151
  *MSGQ · 10, 14, 45, 47, 50, 56, 57, 60, 88, 90, 143, 145, 151
  *NETMSG · 15, 19, 45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 62, 151
  *PAGER · 14, 19, 45, 46, 48, 50, 56, 57, 151, 180
  *PHONE · 14, 44, 45, 48, 56, 57, 58, 59, 75, 151
  *SPLF · 10, 15, 44, 45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 61, 88, 90, 105, 132, 133, 143, 145, 151
Delivery type · 12, 46, 47, 49, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 112, 113, 132
Display ICM Log Information · 81
Display ICOM/400 Log Entries · 136
Display Log · 80
Display Message Queue · 138
Display QHST · 21, 79, 84, 85, 86, 104, 124
Displaying Log Detail · 86
DSPLOGICM · 20, 80, 81, 135, 136
DSPMSGICM · 138
DSPQHSTICM · 21, 84, 85, 86

E

Edit function authority · 125, 126, 127, 128
Edit Group Authority · 67
E-mail Communications Entries · 83
End ICOM/400 subsystem · 134
End Message Queue Monitor · 142
End monitor · 110
ENDMSGQICM · 135, 142
Entry status · 47, 49, 79, 80, 147, 148
Error e-mail address · 26
Escalation status · 19, 47, 49, 50, 79, 80, 147, 148, 158, 160
Escalation table · 14, 18, 20, 45, 46, 49, 50, 56, 64, 73, 74, 113, 160, 162
Escalation Table
  Adding · 73
  Changing · 74
  Copying · 74
  Displaying · 74
  Removing · 74

F

Fax Communications Entries · 84
Force action · 97, 98, 104
Force depth · 129, 130
function authorities · 42, 119, 125, 126, 128
Function authorities · 124
  *SECURITY · 126
  *WRKHST · 128

H

Hayes/Compatible modem · 41
History
  Remove · 79
History information · 47
History Information · 19, 35, 42, 79, 80, 82, 83, 84
HLDMONICM · 135, 142
HLDMSGQICM · 135, 143
Hold Message Queue Monitor · 143
Hold Monitor using ICOM/400 · 142

I

IBM 5853 Modem · 38
IBM 7852 modem · 40
IBM 7855-10 Model
  Asynchronous operation · 40
  Synchronous operation · 39
IBM 7855-10 Modem · 39
ICOM/400 e-mail address · 120, 123, 133, 156, 216
ICOM/400 Main Menu · 41
ICOM/400 Voice · 25, 45, 171, 172

Inactivity interval · 11, 91, 94, 95, 96, 97, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 109, 119, 121
installation · 23
Installation
CD-ROM · 24
E-mail Requirements · 23
Faxing requirements · 23
Internet download · 24
Paging requirements · 23
Tape · 24
Interactive message queue · 119, 124
introduction message · 174
IP entries · 55, 76, 77
IP entry · 59, 60, 77, 78

L

Line description information · 36
Line description resource name · 27
Line wrap action · 120, 123
Log entries retention days · 121

M

Mail host port · 26
Mail host server address · 26
Maintenance · 169
Message queue monitor
Add entry · 97
Modem configuration · 36, 38
Asynchonous modems · 36
Hayes/Compatible modem · 41
IBM 5853 Modem · 36, 38
IBM 7852 Modem · 40
IBM 7855-10 modem · 36
IBM 7855-10 Modem · 39
modem instructions · 36, 122
modems
ModemBlaster · 171, 174
PhoneRider · 171, 172, 185, 186, 187, 192, 193, 194, 195, 199, 204, 205
Monitor Message Queue · 143
Monitor types · *See* Monitors
Monitors
Configuration status (*CFGSTS) · 10, 51, 52, 88, 89, 90, 92, 110, 142, 144
CPU (*CPU) · 51, 52, 88, 89, 93, 110, 142, 144
CPU monitor (*CPU) · 93
Job (*JOB) · 10, 20, 51, 88, 94, 101, 143, 145
Job Monitor (*JOB) · 94
Job queue (*JOBQ) · 51, 88, 95, 143, 145
Job Queue (*JOBQ) · 95
Message queue (*MSGQ) · 11, 51, 62, 96, 97, 142, 143, 144, 145
Message Queue (*MSGQ) · 96
Network file (*NETF) · 51, 88, 100, 143, 145
Network File (*NETF) · 100
Object size (*OBJSIZ) · 51, 88, 101, 143, 145
Object Size (*OBJSIZ) · 101
Output queue (*OUTQ) · 51, 88, 102, 143, 145
Output Queue (*OUTQ) · 102
QHST (*QHST) · 51, 88, 103, 143, 145
Remote device (*RMTDEV) · 51, 88, 105, 143, 145
Remote Device (*RMTDEV) · 105
Spooled file (*SPLF) · 51
Spooled File (*SPLF) · 105
Subsystem (*SBS) · 108
User defined (*USRDFN) · 51, 88, 109, 143, 145
User Defined (*USRDFN) · 109
MONMSGQICM · 135, 142, 143

N

Notify recipients not oncall · 121
Number of occurrences · 93, 96, 102, 103, 105

P

Pager Company
Adding · 70
Changing · 72
Copying · 72
Displaying · 72
Removing · 72
POP3 host server address · 120, 123
Pre-defined Message
Adding · 75
Changing · 76, 77
Copying · 76, 78
Displaying · 76, 78
Removing · 76, 78
Sending · 76
Pre-defined messages · 75
Product Warranty · 169
PTF Retrieval · 167

Q

Queue depth · 129, 130
Quick Start · 25

R

Recipient
Authority · 63
Changing · 62, 178
Copying · 62, 178
Displaying · 63, 179
Removing · 63, 178
Sending a message · 63
Recipient Authority · 63, 64
Recipient group
Authority · 66
Recipient Group
Adding · 65
Changing · 66
Copying · 66
Displaying · 66
Removing · 66
Sending a message · 66
Recipient Information · 36, 42, 55, 67, 70, 73, 74
Recipients
Adding · 56, 177, 179
Release Message Queue Monitor · 145
Release Monitor using ICOM/400 · 144

Remove ICOM/400 Activity · 146
Remove Log Entries · 82
Remove Log Entries using ICOM/400 · 149
Removing a Schedule · 69
Removing ICOM/400 · 38
Resource Communication Entries · 82
Resource Communications Entries · 83
resource name · 119, 120, 121, 123, 166, 168
restricted state · 119, 121, 124, 126, 143
RLSMONICM · 135, 144
RLSMSGQICM · 135, 145
RMVATVICM · 81, 135, 146
RMVHSTICM · 79, 135, 147
RMVLOGEICM · 82, 135, 149

S

Schedule
  Adding · 68
  Changing · 69
  Copying · 69
  Displaying · 69
security code · 60, 173, 174, 175
Selected recipients · 113
Send program message · 114
Send Spooled File · 131, 154
Send using ICOM/400 · 149
Sending a Message Using ICOM/400 · 44
Sending a page with *PHONE · 59
Set-up Worksheet · 216
SMTP host server address · 120, 123
SNDMSGICM · 10, 37, 42, 44, 45, 46, 51, 53, 59, 63, 66, 75, 76, 122, 131, 135
SNDSPLFICM · 51, 53, 130, 131, 132, 133, 135, 154
SNDSPLFICM - Fax information · 133
Start ICOM/400 subsystem · 134
Start monitor · 109
subsystem monitor · 108, 143, 145
System attributes
  E-mail · 123
  Faxing · 122
  Paging · 121
  Spooled files · 122
System controls · 119

T

Technical Assistance Worksheet · 215
Testing · 37
to AS/Manager Support System
  Sign-on · 167
Troubleshooting · 166
Two-way communication · 16, 57, 58, 70, 71

U

Upgrade · 24

V

voice message · 45, 60, 77, 173, 175
voice messages · 60
voice messaging · 59, 60, 122

W

Wakeup · 90
Work with Actions · 111
Work with Actions using ICOM/400 · 154
Work with Activity · 18, 51, 52, 53
Work with Escalation Tables · 73
Work with Escalation Tables using ICOM/400 · 155
Work with Function Authorities · 119, 124, 125
Work with History · 18, 19, 42, 47, 48, 49, 73
Work with ICOM/400 e-mail · 133, 135
Work with ICOM/400 E-mail · 156
Work with monitor subsystem · 111
Work with monitors · 89, 124
Work with Page Queues · 129
Work with Page Queues using ICOM/400 · 162
Work with Pager Companies · 16, 17, 58, 70, 72, 155, 162, 216
Work with Pages using ICOM/400 · 158
Work with Pre-Defined Messages · 74
Work with Pre-defined Messages using ICOM/400 · 157
Work with Recipient Groups · 64, 65, 66, 155, 156
Work with Recipients · 14, 44, 45, 46, 55, 62, 63, 113, 162, 163
Work with Schedules · 13, 14, 67, 68, 69, 163
Work with Spooled Files · 119, 130, 131, 163
WRKACTICM · 135, 154, 155
WRKATVICM · 18, 42, 51, 52, 53
WRKCMPICM · 135, 155
WRKESCICM · 135, 155
WRKGRPICM · 135, 155, 156
WRKHSTICM · 19, 35, 42, 47, 48
WRKMAILICM · 133, 135, 156
WRKMONICM · 89, 110
WRKPAGICM · 135, 158
WRKPAGQICM · 135, 162
WRKRCPICM · 135, 162
WRKSCDICM · 135, 163
WRKSPLFICM · 130, 131, 135, 163

Z

ZICOM400 · 24, 38, 111, 121, 134